

■ Contents

Introduction	3
Software version	3
Safety regulations	4
Warning against unintended start	4
Introduction	6
Available literature	7
Technology	8
How to select your frequency converter	13
Normal/high overload torque mode	13
Ordering form VLT 5000 Series - Typecode	16
Selection of modules and accessories	18
PC Software tools	18
Product range	20
Accessories for VLT 5000 Series	
Technical data	31
General technical data	
Electrical data	37
Fuses	
Measurements, dimensions	56
Mechanical dimensions	
Mechanical installation	59
Mechanical installation	
Electrical installation	62
Safety earthing	
Extra protection (RCD)	
Electrical installation - mains supply	
Electrical installation - motor cables	
	63
	63
	64
	64
	64
<u> </u>	66
	66
	76 70
	79 80
	82
	83
	84
	- 1



Serial communication	87
Control Word According to FC Profile	92
Status Word according to FC Profile	94
Control word according to Fieldbus Profile	
Status word according to Fieldbus Profile	97
Telegram example	99
Connection example	105
Conveyor belt	105
Pump	106
Gantry Crane	107
Torque control, speed feedback	108
VLT 5000 controllers	109
	111
	112
•	113
Special conditions	114
Galvanic Isolation (PELV)	114
	115
9	116
	116
	118
<u> </u>	121
·	121
	121
•	122
•	123
	125
	129
EMC Immunity	129
Definitions	132
Factory settings	135
Index	144



■ Software version

VLT 5000 Series

Design guide Software version: 3.7x







This design guide can be used for all VLT 5000 Series frequency converters with software version 3.7x.

The software version number can be seen from parameter 624. CE and C-tick labelling do not cover VLT 5001-5062, 525-600 V units.





The voltage of the frequency converter is dangerous whenever the equipment is connected to mains. Incorrect

installation of the motor or the frequency converter may cause damage to the equipment, serious personal injury or death.

Consequently, the instructions in this manual, as well as national and local rules and safety regulations, must be complied with.

■ Safety regulations

- The frequency converter must be disconnected from mains if repair work is to be carried out. Check that the mains supply has been disconnected and that the necessary time has passed before removing motor and mains plugs.
- The [STOP/RESET] key on the control panel of the frequency converter does not disconnect the equipment from mains and is thus <u>not</u> to be used as a safety switch.
- Correct protective earthing of the equipment must be established, the user must be protected against supply voltage, and the motor must be protected against overload in accordance with applicable national and local regulations.
- 4. The earth leakage currents are higher than 3.5 mA.
- Protection against motor overload is not included in the factory setting. If this function is desired, set parameter 128 to data value ETR trip or data value ETR warning.
 Note: The function is initialised at 1.16 x rated motor current and rated motor frequency. For the North American market: The ETR functions provide class 20 motor overload protection
- Do <u>not</u> remove the plugs for the motor and main supply while the frequency converter is connected to mains. Check that the mains supply has been disconnected and that the necessary time has expired before removing motor and mains plugs.

in accordance with NEC.

7. Please note that the frequency converter has more voltage inputs than L1, L2 and L3, when loadsharing (linking of DC intermediate circuit) and external 24 V DC have been installed. Check that all voltage inputs have been disconnected and that the necessary time has passed before repair work is commenced.

■ Warning against unintended start

- The motor can be brought to a stop by means of digital commands, bus commands, references or a local stop, while the frequency converter is connected to mains.
 If personal safety considerations make it necessary to ensure that no unintended start occurs, these stop functions are not sufficient.
- While parameters are being changed, the motor may start. Consequently, the stop key [STOP/RESET] must always be activated, following which data can be modified.
- A motor that has been stopped may start if faults occur in the electronics of the frequency converter, or if a temporary overload or a fault in the supply mains or the motor connection ceases.

■ Use on isolated mains

See section RFI Switch regarding use on isolated mains.

It is important to follow the recommendations regarding installation on IT-mains, since sufficient protection of the complete installation must be observed. Not taking care using relevant monitoring devices for IT-mains may result in damage.





Warning:

Touching the electrical parts may be fatal - even after the equipment has been disconnected from mains.

Also make sure that other voltage inputs have been disconnected, such as external 24 V DC, load-sharing (linkage of DC intermediate circuit), as well as the motor connection for kinetic back-up.

Using	VLT	5001-5006,	200-240	V:	wait at least 4 minutes
Using	VLT	5008-5052,	200-240	V:	wait at least 15 minutes
Using	VLT	5001-5006,	380-500	V:	wait at least 4 minutes
Using	VLT	5008-5062,	380-500	V:	wait at least 15 minutes
Using	VLT	5072-5302,	380-500	V:	wait at least 20 minutes
Using	VLT	5350-5500,	380-500	V:	wait at least 15 minutes
Using	VLT	5001-5005,	525-600	V:	wait at least 4 minutes
Using	VLT	5006-5022,	525-600	V:	wait at least 15 minutes
Using	VLT	5027-5062,	525-600	V:	wait at least 30 minutes
Using	VLT	5042-5352,	525-690	V:	wait at least 20 minutes



■ Introduction

This Design Guide is intended as a tool for use when designing a plant or system that includes VLT 5000 Series. Specific technical publications on the VLT 5000 Series: Operating Instructions and Design Guide.

Operating Instructions: Gives instructions in optimum installation, commissioning and service.

Design Guide: Gives all required information for design purposes, and gives a good

insight into the technology, product range, technical data, etc.

The Operating Instructions include a Quick Setup instruction and are delivered with the unit.

When reading through this Design Guide, you will come across various symbols that require special attention.

The symbols used are the following:



Indicates a general warning



NB!:

Indicates something to be noted by the reader



Indicates a high-voltage warning



■ Available literature

Below is a list of the literature available for VLT 5000. It must be noted that there may be deviations from one country to another.

Supplied with the unit:

THE	
Operating instructions	
VLT 5300 - 5500 Installation Guide	
VLT 5122 - 5302, 380-500 V, Installation Guide	MI.90.JX.YY
VLT 5042 - 5352, 525-690 V, Installation Guide	
Communication with VIT 5000:	
Communication with VLT 5000:	
VLT 5000 Profibus manual	
VLT 5000 DeviceNet manual	
VLT 5000 LonWorks manual	
VLT 5000 Modbus manual	
VLT 5000 Interbus manual	MG.10.OX.YY
Application options for VLT 5000:	
VLT 5000 SyncPos option manual	MG.10.EX.YY
VLT 5000 Positioning controller manual	MG.50.PX.YY
VLT 5000 Synchronising controller manual	MG.10.NX.YY
Ring spinning option	MI.50.ZX.02
Wobble function option	MI.50.JX.02
Winder and Tension control option	MG.50.KX.02
Instructions for VLT 5000:	
Loadsharing	
VLT 5000 Brake resistors	MI.90.FX.YY
Brake resistors for horizontal applications (VLT 5001 - 5011) (Only in English and German)	MI.50.SX.YY
LC filter modules	MI.56.DX.YY
Converter for encoder inputs (5V TTL to 24 V DC) (Only in combined English/German)	MI.50.IX.51
Back Plate to VLT 5000 Series	MN.50.XX.02
Various literature for VLT 5000:	
Design Guide	MG.51.BX.YY
Incorporating a VLT 5000 Profibus in a Simatic S5 system	MC.50.CX.02
Incorporating a VLT 5000 Profibus in a Simatic S7 system	MC.50.AX.02
Hoist and the VLT 5000 series	MN.50.RX.02
Miscellaneous (only in English):	
Protection against electrical hazards	MN.90.GX.02
	MN 50 OX 02
	1011 1.00.07.02
Choice of prefuses	
Choice of prefuses	MN.90.CX.02
Choice of prefuses VLT on IT mains Filtering of harmonic currents	MN.90.CX.02
Choice of prefuses VLT on IT mains Filtering of harmonic currents Handling aggressive environments CI-TI TM contactors - VLT® frequency converters	MN.90.CX.02 MN.90.FX.02 MN.90.IX.02

X = version number

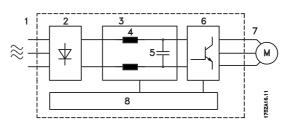
YY = language version



■ Control principle

A frequency converter rectifies AC voltage from mains into DC voltage, after which this DC voltage is converted into a AC current with a variable amplitude and frequency.

The motor is thus supplied with variable voltage and frequency, which enables infinitely variable speed control of three-phased, standard AC motors.



1. Mains voltage

3 x 200 - 240 V AC, 50 / 60 Hz. 3 x 380 - 500 V AC, 50 / 60 Hz. 3 x 525 - 600 V AC, 50 / 60 Hz. 3 X 525 - 690 V AC, 50 / 60 Hz.

2. Rectifier

A three-phase rectifier bridge that rectifies AC current into DC current.

3. Intermediate circuit

DC voltage = $1.35 \times \text{mains voltage } \text{M}$.

4. Intermediate circuit coils

Smooth the intermediate circuit current and limit the load on mains and components (mains transformer, wires, fuses and contactors).

5. Intermediate circuit capacitors

Smooth the intermediate circuit voltage.

6. Inverter

Converts DC voltage into variable AC voltage with a variable frequency.

7. Motor voltage

Variable AC voltage, 0-100% of mains supply voltage. Variable frequency: 0.5-132/0.5-1000 Hz.

8. Control card

This is where to find the computer that controls the inverter which generates the pulse pattern by which the DC voltage is converted into variable AC voltage with a variable frequency.

WCplus control principle

The frequency converter features an inverter control system called VVC^{plus}, which is a further development of the Voltage Vector Control (VVC) known i.e. from Danfoss VLT 3000 Series.

WCplus controls an induction motor by energizing it with a variable frequency and a voltage that matches it. If the motor load is changed, the magnetisation of the motor changes too, and so does its speed. Consequently, the motor current is measured continuously and the actual voltage requirement and slip of the motor are calculated from a motor model. Motor frequency and voltage are adjusted to ensure that the motor operating point remains optimum under varying conditions.

The development of the VVC^{plus} principle is the result of a wish to maintain robust, sensorless regulation that is tolerant to different motor characteristics without motor derating being required.

First and foremost, the current measurement and the motor model have been improved. The current is split into magnetising and torque-generating parts and provides for much better and quicker estimation of the actual motor loads. It is now possible to compensate for rapid load changes. Full torque as well as extremely accurate speed control can now be obtained even at low speeds or even at standstill.

In a "special motor mode", permanent magnet synchronous motors and/or parallel motors can be used.



Good torque control properties, smooth transitions to and from current limit operation and robust pull-out torque protection are ensured.

After automatic motor adaptation, WC^{plus} will help to ensure extremely accurate motor control.

Advantages of the VVC^{plus} control system:

- Accurate speed control, now even at low speed
- Quick response from received signal to full motor shaft torque
- Good compensation for step loads
- Controlled transition from normal operation to current limit operation (and vice versa)
- Reliable pull-out torgue protection throughout the speed range, also in the case of field weakening
- Great tolerance towards varying motor data
- Torque control, comprising control of both the torque-generating and the magnetising component of the current
- Full holding torque (closed loop)

As standard, the frequency converter comes with a number of integral components that would normally have to be acquired separately. These integral components (RFI filter, DC coils, screen clamps and serial communication port) are space-savers that simplify installation, since the frequency converter fulfills most requirements without any supplementary components.

Programmable control inputs and signal outputs in four Setups

The frequency converter uses a digital technique which makes it possible to program the different control inputs and signal outputs and to select four different user-defined Setups for all parameters.

For the user, it is easy to program the desired functions by means of the control panel on the frequency converter or the RS 485 user interface.

Protection against mains interference

The frequency converter is protected against the transients that occur in the mains supply, e.g. when switching power factor correction or when fuses blow.

The rated motor voltage and full torque can be maintained all the way down to 10% undervoltage in the mains supply.

Minor interference on mains

Since as standard the frequency converter features intermediate circuit coils, there is only a small amount of harmonic mains supply interference. This ensures a good power factor and lower peak current, which reduces the load on the mains installation.

Advanced VLT protection

Current measurement on all three motor phases provides perfect protection of the frequency converter against earthing and short-circuiting faults on the motor connection.

Constant monitoring of all three motor phases enables switching on the motor output, e.g. by means of a contactor.

Efficient monitoring of the three mains supply phases ensures that the unit stops in the case of phase failure. This avoids overloading the inverter and the capacitors in the intermediate circuit, which would dramatically reduce the service life of the frequency converter.

As standard, the frequency converter features integral thermal protection. If a situation of thermal overload occurs, this function cuts out the inverter.

Reliable galvanic isolation

In the frequency converter, all control terminals as well as terminals 1-5 (AUX relays) are supplied by or connected to circuits that comply with PELV requirements in relation to the mains potential.

Advanced motor protection

The frequency converter features integrated electronic, thermal motor protection.

The frequency converter calculates the motor temperature on the basis of current, frequency and time.

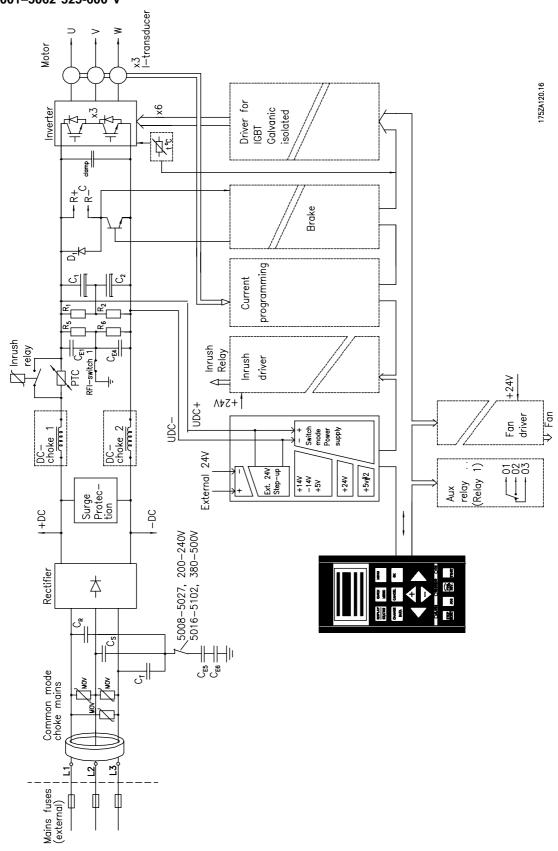
As opposed to the traditional bimetallic protection, electronic protection takes account of the reduction in cooling at low frequencies that comes from reduced fan speed (motors with internal ventilation).

Thermal motor protection is comparable to a normal motor thermistor.

To obtain maximum protection against overheating of the motor if the motor is covered or blocked, or if the fan fails, a thermistor can be integrated and connected to the thermistor input of the frequency converter (terminals 53/54), see parameter 128 of the Operating Instructions.

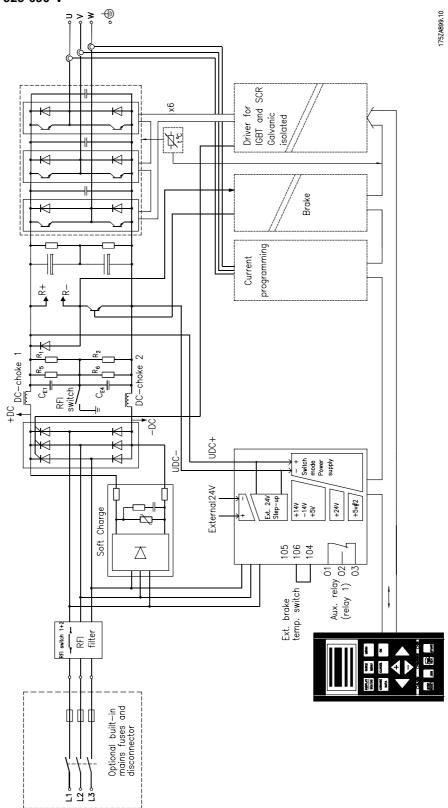


■ Key Diagram for VLT 5001-5027 200-240 V, VLT 5001-5102 380-500V, VLT 5001-5062 525-600 V





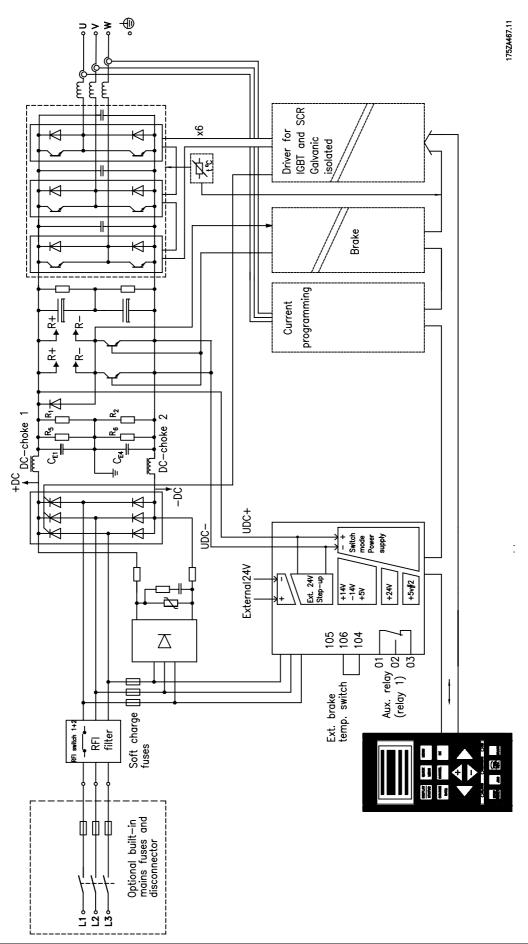
■ Key Diagram for VLT 5122-5302 380-500V and VLT 5042-5352 525-690 V



Note: The RFI switch has no function in the 525-690 V drives.



■ Key Diagram for VLT 5350-5500 380-500V





■ How to select your frequency converter

A frequency converter must be selected on the basis of the given motor current at maximum load on the unit. The rated output current $I_{VLT,N}$ must be equal to or higher than the required motor current.

The frequency converter is supplied for four mains voltage ranges: 200-240 V, 380-500 V, 525-600 V and 525-690 V...

■ Normal/high overload torque mode

This function enables the frequency converter to perform a constant 100% torque, using an oversize motor.

The choice between a normal or a high overload torque characteristic is made in parameter 101.

This is also where to choose between a high/normal constant torque characteristic (CT) or a high/normal VT torque characteristic.

If a high torque characteristic is chosen, a rated motor with the frequency converter obtains up to 160% torque for 1 min. in both CT and VT.

If a normal torque characteristic is chosen, an oversize motor allows up to 110% torque performance for up to 1 min. in both CT and VT. This function is used mainly for pumps and fans, since these applications do not require an overload torque.

The advantage of choosing a normal torque characteristic for an oversize motor is that the frequency converter will be able constantly to yield 100% torque, without derating as a result of a bigger motor.



NB!:

This function <u>cannot</u> be chosen for VLT 5001-5006, 200-240 Volts, and VLT 5001-5011, 380-500 Volts.

■ Type code ordering number string

The VLT 5000 series frequency converter is offered in a large number of variants. On the basis of your order, the frequency converter is given an ordering number that can be seen from the nameplate on the unit. The number may look as follows:

VLT5008PT5B20EBR3DLF10A10C0

This means that the frequency converter is configured as a:

- 5,5 kW unit at 160% torque (Position 1-7 VLT 5008)
- Process control card (Position 8 P)
- 380-500 V three phase supply (Position 9-10 T5)
- Bookstyle IP20 enclosure (Position 11-13 B20)

- Extended hardware version with brake (Position 14-15 - EB)
- Built in RFI filter (Position 16-17 R3)
- Supplied with display (Position 18-19 DL)
- Built in Profibus option (Position 20-22 F10)
- Built in programmable SyncPos controller (Position 23-25 - A10)
- Uncoated printed circuit boards (Position 26-27 - C0)

Variants and options possible

In the following you will find an overview of possible variants that can be put together. Please refer to the description of the designation below.

C00	Compact IP00	DE	Extended with brake, disconnect and fuses
B20	Bookstyle IP20	DX	Extended without brake, with disconnect and fuses
C20	Compact IP20	PS	Standard with 24 V supply
CN1	Compact Nema1	PB	Standard with 24 V supply, brake, fuse and disconnect
C54	Compact IP54	PD	Standard with 24 V supply, fuse and disconnect
ST	Standard	PF	Standard with 24 V supply and fuse
SB	Standard with brake	R0	Without filter
EB	Extended with brake	R1	Class A1 filter
EX	Extended without brake	R3	Class A1 and B filter

*Danfold*VLT 5000 Design Guide

VLT 5001-5500, 380-500 V units Typecode designation: T5

Pow	ersize (kW))	Type			Enclo	sure						HW	variant						RFI filter	r
	Torque			C00	B20	C20	CN1	C54	ST	SB	EB	EX	DE	DX	PS	PB	PD	PF	R0	R1	R3
110%		160%																			
			9-10	11-13	11-13	11-13	11-13	11-13	14-15	14-15	14-15	14-15	14-15	14-15	14-15	14-15	14-15	14-15	16-17	16-17	16-17
	0.75		5001		Х	Х		X	Х	Х	Х										Х
	1.1		5002		Х	Х		Х	Х	Х	Х										Х
	1.5		5003		Х	Х		Х	Х	Х	Х										Х
	2.2		5004		Х	Х		Χ	Х	Х	Х										Х
	3		5005		Х	Х		X	Х	Х	Х										Х
	3.7		5006		Х	Х		X	Х	Х	Х										Х
	5.5		5008		Х	Χ		X	Х	Х	Х										Х
	7.5		5011		Х	Х		X	Х	Х	Χ									X	
15		11	5016			Х		X	Х	Х	Χ								Х		Х
18.5		15	5022			Х		X	Х	Χ	Χ								Х		Х
22		18.5	5027			Х		X	Х	Χ	Χ								Х		Х
30		22	5032			Χ		X	Х	X	Х								Х		X
37		30	5042			Χ		X	Х	Х	Х								Х		Х
45		37	5052			Χ		X	Х	Х	Х								Х		Х
55		45	5062			Χ		X	Х	Х	Х								Х		Х
75		55	5072			X		X	Х	X	Χ								Х		Х
90		75	5102	<u> </u>		Χ		X	Х	X	X								Х		X
110		90	5122	Х			X	X	Х	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	Х	X	
132		110	5152	Х			Χ	X	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х	X	Х	Х	
160		132	5202	Х			Х	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х	X	Х	Х	Х	Х	X	
200		160	5252	Х			Χ	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х	X	Х	Х	Х	Х	X	
250		200	5302	X x1)			X	X	X	X	X	X	X X ¹⁾	X X ¹⁾	Х	X	Х	Х	X	X	
315		250 315	5350	x1)			X	X	+		X	X	x ¹⁾	x1)					X	X	
355 400		315 355	5450 5500	x1)			X	X	+		X	X	X1)	x1)					X	X	
400		JDD	5500	X'/			X	X			X	X	X '/	X '/					X	X	

1.	Not available as IP00 with DE and DX options		
C00	Compact IP00	DE	Extended with brake, disconnect and fuses
B20	Bookstyle IP20	DX	Extended without brake, with disconnect and fuses
C20	Compact IP20	PS	Standard with 24 V supply
CN1	Compact Nema1	PB	Standard with 24 V supply, brake, fuse and disconnect
C54	Compact IP54	PD	Standard with 24 V supply, fuse and disconnect
ST	Standard	PF	Standard with 24 V supply and fuse
SB	Standard with brake	R0	Without filter
EB	Extended with brake	R1	Class A1 filter
EV	Extended without brake	Da	Class A1 and R filter



VLT 5001-5062, 525-600 V units Typecode designation: T6

Powersize (kW)		Type		Enclosure		HW va	ariant	RFI filter	
Tore	que		C00 C20 CN1			ST	EB	B R0	
110%	160%								
		9-10	11-13	11-13	11-13	14-15	14-15	16-17	
1.1	0.75	5001		X		Х	Х	х	
1.5	1.1	5002		X		Х	Х	х	
2.2	1.5	5003		X		Х	Х	х	
3.0	2.2	5004		X		Х	Х	×	
4.0	3.0	5005		X		Х	Х	×	
5.5	4.0	5006		X		Х	Х	×	
7.5	5.5	5008		X		Х	Х	×	
7.5	7.5	5011		X		Х	Х	×	
15	11	5016		X		Х	Х	×	
18.5	15	5022		X	-	Х	Х	Х	
22	18.5	5027		X		Х	Х	Х	
30	22	5032		X		Х	Х	Х	
37	30	5042		X	-	Х	Х	Х	
45	37	5052		X	-	Х	Х	Х	
55	45	5062		Х		Х	Х	×	

VLT 5042-5352, 525-690 V units Typecode designation: T7

Power s	size (kW)	Туре	Enclosure				Hardware variant							RFI		
														filter		
Tor	que		C00	CN1	C54	ST	SB	EB	EX	DE	DX	PS	PB	PD	PF	R0
110%	160%															
		9-10	11-13	11-13	11-13	14-15	14-15	14-15	14-15	14-15	14-15	14-15	14-15	14-15	14-15	16-17
45	37	5042	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ
55	45	5052	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ
75	55	5062	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ
90	75	5072	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ
110	90	5102	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ
132	110	5122	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ
160	132	5152	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ
200	160	5202	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ
250	200	5252	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ
315	250	5302	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ
400	315	5352	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ	Χ

Voltage (position 9-10)

The drives are available in three voltage ratings. Please be aware that some drives at 500 V supply match a motor power size larger than 400 V - please refer to the individual technical data.

- T2 200-240 V three phase supply voltage
- T5 380-500 V three phase supply voltage
- T6 525-600 V three phase supply voltage
- T7 525-690 V three phase supply voltage

Enclosure variants (position 11-13)

Bookstyle units are available for use in control cabinets - the slim design allows many units in one cabinet. Compact units are designed for mounting on walls or machines. Higher power units are also available as IPO0 units for installation in control cabinets.

- C00 Compact IP00 enclosure
- B20 Bookstyle IP20 enclosure

- C20 Compact IP20 enclosure
- CN1 Compact Nema1 enclosure also fulfilling IP20/21 specifications
- C54 Compact IP54 enclosure also fulfilling NEMA12 demands

Hardware variants (position 14-15)

The hardware variants differ depending on power size.

- ST Standard hardware
- SB Standard hardware and additional brake chopper
- EB Extended hardware (24 V external supply for backup of control card and load sharing connections) and an additional brake chopper
- EX Extended hardware (24 V external supply for backup of control card and load sharing connections)



- DE Extended hardware (24 V external supply for backup of control card and load sharing connections), brake chopper, disconnect and fuses
- DX Extended hardware (24 V external supply for backup of control card and load sharing connections), disconnect and fuses
- PS Standard hardware with 24 V external supply for backup of control card
- PB Standard hardware with 24 V external supply for backup of control card, brake chopper, fuse and disconnect option
- PD Standard hardware with 24 V external supply for backup of control card, mains fuse and disconnect option
- PF Standard hardware with 24 V external supply for backup of control card and built in main fuses

FRI filter variants (position 16-17)

Different RFI filter variants offer the possibility to comply with class A1 and class B according to EN55011.

- R0 No filter performance specified
- R1 Compliance with class A1 filter
- R3 Compliance with class B and A1

Compliance depends on cable length. Please be aware that some power sizes always have built in filters from factory.

Display (position 18-19)

The control unit (display and keypad)

- D0 No display in the unit (not possible for IP54 enclosures and VLT 5350-5500)
- DL Display supplied with the unit

Field bus option (position 20-22)

A wide selection of high performance field bus options is available

- F0 No field bus option built in
- F10 Profibus DP V0/V1 12 Mbaud
- F13 Profibus DP V0/FMS 12 Mbaud
- F20 Modbus Plus
- F30 DeviceNet
- F40 LonWorks Free topology
- F41 LonWorks 78 kbps
- F42 LonWorks 1,25 Mbps
- F50 Interbus

Application options (position 23-25)

Several application options are available to enhance the functionality of the frequency converter

- A00 No option built in
- A10 SyncPos programmable controller (not possible with Modbus Plus and LonWorks)
- A11 Synchronising controller (not possible with Modbus Plus and LonWorks)
- A12 Positioning controller (not possible with Modbus Plus and LonWorks)

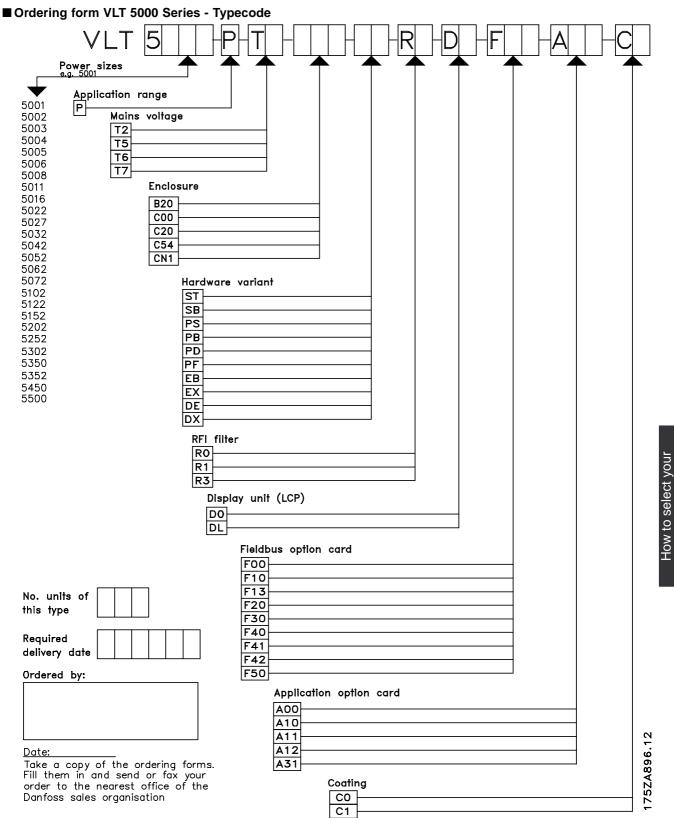
 A31 - Additional relays - 4 relays for 250 VAC (not possible with field bus options)

Coating (position 26-27)

To increase protection of the drive against aggressive environments it is possible to order coated printed circuit boards.

- C0 Non coated boards (VLT 5350-5500) only available with coated boards)
- C1 Coated boards







■ Selection of modules and accessories

Danfoss offers a wide range of modules and accessories for VLT 5000 Series.

■ LC filter module

The LC filter reduces the voltage rise time (dV/dt) and the ripple current (ΔI) to the motor, thereby making current and voltage almost sinusoidal. The acoustic motor noise is therefore reduced to a minimum.

See also instructions MI.56.DX.51.

■LCP control unit

Control unit with display and keypad for programming VLT frequency converters. Available as an option for IP 00 and IP 20 units.

Enclosure: IP 65.

■ Remote-mounting kits for LCP

The remote kit option makes it possible to move the display from the frequency converter e.g. to the front panel of an integrated cabinet.

Technical data

Enclosure: IP 65 front

Max. cable length

between VLT and unit: 3 m Communication std: RS 422

Reference is also made to instructions MI.56.AX.51 (IP 20) and MI.56.GX.52 (IP 54).

■ IP 4x top cover

IP 4x top cover is an optional enclosure element available for IP 20 Compact units.

If an IP 4x top cover is used, an IP 20 unit is upgraded to comply with enclosure IP 4x from the top. In practice, this means that the unit complies with IP 40 on upper, horizontal surfaces.

A top cover is available for the following Compact units:

VLT type 5001-5006, 200-240 V

VLT type 5001-5011, 380-500 V

VLT type 5001-5011, 525-600 V

■ Terminal cover

Using a terminal cover, it is possible to field mount an IP 20 unit, type VLT 5008-5052.

A terminal cover is available for the following compact units:

VLT type 5008-5027, 200-240 V

VLT type 5016-5102, 380-500 V VLT type 5016-5062, 525-600 V

■ Contactors

Danfoss also manufactures a complete range of contactors.

■ Brake resistors

Brake resistors are used in applications where high dynamics are needed or a high inertia load has to be stopped. The brake resistor is used to remove the energy, see also Instructions MI.50.SX.YY and MI.90.FX.YY.

■ Harmonic filter

Harmonic currents do not directly affect the electricity consumption but has an impact on following conditions:

Higher total current to be handled by the installations

- Increases load on transformer (sometimes it will require a larger transformer, particular at retrofit)
- Increases heat losses in transformer and installation
- In some cases demands larger cables, switches and fuses

Higher voltage distortion due to higher current

- Increase risk for disturbing electronic equipment connected to same grid

A high percentage of rectifier load from eg frequency converters, will increase the harmonic current, which must be reduced to avoid the above consequences. Therefore the frequency converter has as standard, built in DC coils reducing the total current with about 40% (compared to devices without any arrangement for harmonic suppression), down to 40-45% ThiD.

In some cases there is a need for further suppression (eg retrofit with frequency converters). For this purpose Danfoss can offer two advanced harmonic filters AHF05 and AHF10, bringing the harmonic current down to around 5% and 10% respectively. For further details see instruction MG.80.BX.YY.

■ PC Software tools

PC Software - MCT 10

All drives are equipped with a serial communication port. We provide a PC tool for communication between PC and frequency converter, VLT Motion Control Tool MCT 10 Set-up Software.



MCT 10 Set-up Software

MCT 10 has been designed as an easy to use interactive tool for setting parameters in our frequency converters.

The MCT 10 Set-up Software will be useful for:

- Planning a communication network off-line. MCT 10 contains a complete frequency converter database
- · Commissioning frequency converters on line
- · Saving settings for all frequency converters
- · Replacing a drive in a network
- · Expanding an existing network
- Future developed drives will be supported

MCT 10 Set-up Software support Profibus DP-V1 via a Master class 2 connection. It makes it possible to on line read/write parameters in a frequency converter via the Profibus network. This will eliminate the need for an extra communication network.

The MCT 10 Set-up Software Modules

The following modules are included in the software package:



MCT 10 Set-up Software

Setting parameters Copy to and from frequency converters

Documentation and print out of parameter settings incl. diagrams

SyncPos

Creating SyncPos programme

Ordering number:

Please order your CD containing MCT 10 Set-up Software using code number 130B1000.

MCT 31

The MCT 31 harmonic calculation PC tool enables easy estimation of the harmonic distortion in a given application. Both the harmonic distortion of Danfoss frequency converters as well as non-Danfoss frequency converters with different additional harmonic reduction measurements, such as Danfoss AHF filters and 12-18-pulse rectifiers, can be calculated.

Ordering number:

Please order your CD containing the MCT 31 PC tool using code number 130B1031.



■ Line reactors for load sharing applications

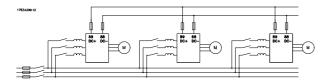
Line reactors are used when connecting frequency converters together in a load sharing application.

200 - 240 V units

VLT	Nominal	Input	Voltage	Inductivity	Ordering
type	power at CT	current	drop		number
	[kW]	[A]	[%]	[mH]	
5001	0.75	3.4	1.7	1.934	175U0021
5002	1.10	4.8	1.7	1.387	175U0024
5003	1.50	7.1	1.7	1.050	175U0025
5004	2.20	9.5	1.7	0.808	175U0026
5005	3.0	11.5	1.7	0.603	175U0028
5006	4.0	14.5	1.7	0.490	175U0029
5008	5.5	32.0	1.7	0.230	175U0030
5011	7.5	46.0	1.7	0.167	175U0032
5016	11.0	61.0	1.7	0.123	175U0034
5022	15.0	73.0	1.7	0.102	175U0036
5027	18.5	88.0	1.7	0.083	175U0047

380 - 500 V units

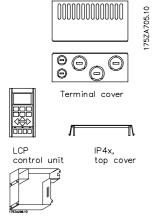
	VLT	Nominal	Input	Voltage	Inductivity	Ordering
	type	power at CT	current	drop		number
		[kW]	[A]	[%]	[mH]	
5001		0.75	2.3	1	3.196	175U0015
5002		1.1	2.6	1	2.827	175U0017
5003		1.5	3.8	1	1.934	175U0021
5004		2.2	5.3	1	1.387	175U0024
5005		3	7.0	1	1.050	175U0025
5006		4	9.1	1	0.808	175U0026
5008		5.5	12.2	1	0.603	175U0028
5011		7.5	15.0	1	0.490	175U0029
5016		11	32.0	1	0.230	175U0030
5022		15	37.5	1	0.196	175U0031
5027		18.5	44.0	1	0.167	175U0032
5032		22	60.0	1	0.123	175U0034
5042		30	72.0	1	0.102	175U0036
5052		37	89.0	1	0.083	175U0047
5062		45	104.0	1	0.070	175U1009
5072		55	144.6	1	0.051	175U0070
5102		75	174.1	1	0.042	175U0071



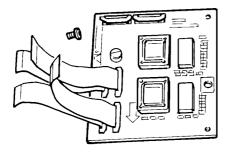
See also instruction MI.50.NX.YY for further information.



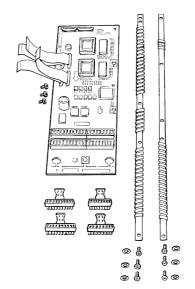
■ Accessories for VLT 5000 Series



IP 20 bottom cover



Memory option



Application option



■ Ordering numbers, misc. hardware:

Type	Description	Ordering no.
IP 4x top cover/NEMA 1 kit1)	Option, VLT 5001-5006, 200-240 V	175Z0928
IP 4x top cover/NEMA 1 kit1)	Option, VLT 5001-5011, 380-500 V and 525-600 V	175Z0928
NEMA 12 bonding plate ²⁾	Option, VLT 5001-5006, 200-240 V	175H4195
NEMA 12 bonding plate ²⁾	Option, VLT 5001-5011, 380-500 V	175H4195
IP 20 terminal cover	Option, VLT 5008-5016, 200-240 V	175Z4622
IP 20 terminal cover	Option, VLT 5022-5027, 200-240 V	175Z4623
IP 20 terminal cover	Option, VLT 5016-5032, 380-500 V and 525-600 V	175Z4622
IP 20 terminal cover	Option, VLT 5042-5062, 380-500 V and 525-600 V	175Z4623
IP 20 terminal cover	Option, VLT 5072-5102, 380-500 V	175Z4280
IP 20 bottom cover	VLT 5032-5052, 200 - 240 V	176F1800
Terminal Adapter Kit	VLT 5032-5052, 200 - 240 V IP 00/Nema 1(IP 20), ST	176F1805
Terminal Adapter Kit	VLT 5032-5052, 200 - 240 V IP 00/Nema 1(IP 20), SB	176F1806
Terminal Adapter Kit	VLT 5032-5052, 200 - 240 V IP 00/Nema 1(IP 20), EB	176F1807
Terminal Adapter Kit	VLT 5032-5052, 200 - 240 V IP 54, ST	176F1808
Terminal Adapter Kit	VLT 5032-5052, 200 - 240 V IP 54, SB	176F1809
Terminal Adapter Kit	VLT 5350-5500, 380 - 500 V EX/DX	176F1815
Terminal Adapter Kit	VLT 5350-5500, 380 - 500 V EB/ DE	176F1816
Encoder converter / 5 V TTL Lined	river / 24 V DC	175Z1929

Rittal Installation Kits

Туре	Description	Order No.
Rittal TS8 enclosure for IP003)	Installation kit for 1800mm high enclosure, VLT5122-5152; 380-500V, VLT	176F1824
	5042-5152, 525-690V	
Rittal TS8 enclosure for IP003)	Installation kit for 2000mm high enclosure, VLT5122-5152, 380-500V; VLT	176F1826
	5042-5152, 525-690V	
Rittal TS8 enclosure for IP003)	Installation kit for 1800mm high enclosure, VLT5202-5302, 380-500V; VLT	176F1823
	5202-5352, 525-690V	
Rittal TS8 enclosure for IP003)	Installation kit for 2000mm high enclosure, VLT5202-5302, 380-500V; VLT	176F1825
	5202-5352, 525-690V	
Floor stand for IP21 and IP54 enclosure ³⁾	Option, VLT5122-5302, 380-500V; VLT 5042-5352, 525-690V	176F1827

¹⁾ IP 4xNEMA top cover is for Compact IP 20 units only and is only intended for horizontal surfaces that comply with IP 4x. The kit also contains a bonding plate (UL).

■ Ordering numbers, control card options, etc.:

LCP:

Type	Description	Ordering no.	
IP 65 LCP option	Separate LCP, only for IP 20 units	175Z0401	
LCP remote-mounting	Remote-mounting kit for LCP, for IP	175Z0850	incl. 3 m cable
kit/IP00/IP20/NEMA 1	00/20 units		
LCP remote-mounting kit IP	Remote-mounting kit for LCP, for IP	175Z7802	incl. 3 m cable
54	54 units		
Cable for LCP	Separate cable	175Z0929	3 m cable

LCP: Control unit with display and keypad.

Supplied excl. LCP.

- IP 4xNEMA 1 top cover is for Compact IP 20 units only and is only intended for horizontal surfaces that comply with IP 4x. The kit also contains a bonding plate (UL).
- 2. NEMA 12 bonding plate (UL) is for compact IP 54 units only.

²⁾ NEMA 12 bonding plate (UL) is for compact IP 54 units only.

³⁾ For details: See VLT 5000 / 6000 HVAC / 8000 AQUA Installation Instruction, MI.90.JX.YY.



Fieldbus options and accessories:

Profibus:

Profibus:			
		Uncoated	Coated
Type	Description	Ordering no.	Ordering no.
Profibus option DP V0/V1	Incl. memory option	175Z0404	175Z2625
Profibus option DP V0/V1	excl. memory option	175Z0402	
Profibus option DP V0/FMS	incl. memory option	175Z3722	175Z3723
Туре	Description		Ordering no.
Profibus Sub D9 Connector	VLT 5001-5027, 200-240 V		175Z3568
for IP 20 / IP 00	VLT 5001-5102, 380-500 V		1102000
01 IF 20 / IF 00	•		
	<u>VLT 5001-5062, 525-600 V</u> VLT 5032-5052, 200-240 V		176F1822
LonWorks:			
_onWorks option, Free topology	Incl. memory option	176F1500	176F1503
_onWorks option, Free topology	excl. memory option	176F1512	
onWorks option, 78 KBPS	Incl. memory option	176F1501	176F1504
onWorks option, 78 KBPS	excl. memory option	176F1513	
onWorks option, 1.25 MBPS	Incl. memory option	176F1502	176F1505
onWorks option, 1.25 MBPS	excl. memory option	176F1514	
DeviceNet:			
DeviceNet option	Incl. memory option	176F1580	176F1581
DeviceNet option	excl. memory option	176F1584	
Modbus:			
Modbus Plus for Compact units	Incl. memory option	176F1551	176F1553
Modbus Plus for Compact units	Excl. memory option	176F1559	
Modbus Plus for Bookstyle units	Incl. memory option	176F1550	176F1552
Modbus Plus for Bookstyle units	Excl. memory option	176F1558	
Modbus RTU	Not factory mounted	175Z3362	
Interbus:			
nterbus	Incl. memory option	175Z3122	175Z3191
nterbus	Excl. memory option	175Z2900	
Application options:			
Programmable SyncPos controller	Application option	175Z0833	175Z3029
Synchronising controller	Application option	175Z3053	175Z3056
Positioning controller	Application option	175Z3055	175Z3057
Relay card option	Application option	175Z2500	175Z2901
Vinder Option	Not factory mounted, SW version	175Z3245	
Ring Spinning Option	3.40 Not factory mounted, SW version	175Z3463	
Wobble Option	3.41 Not factory mounted, SW version	175Z3467	
Wobbie Option	3.41	11020401	

Options can be ordered as factory built-in options, see ordering information.

For information on fieldbus and application option combatibility with older software versions, please contact your Danfoss supplier.



If the Fieldbus options are to be used without application option a version with memory option must be ordered.

■LC filters for VLT 5000

When a motor is controlled by a frequency converter, resonance noise will be heard from the motor. This noise, which is the result of the design of the motor, arises every time one of the inverter switches in the frequency converter is activated. The frequency of the resonance noise thus corresponds to the switching frequency of the frequency converter.

For the VLT 5000 Series, Danfoss is able to supply an LC filter to dampen the acoustic motor noise.

The filter reduces the ramp-up time of the voltage, the peak load voltage U_{PEAK} and the ripple current ΔI to the motor, which means that current and voltage become almost sinusoidal. Consequently, the acoustic motor noise is reduced to a minimum.

Because of the ripple current in the coils, there will be some noise from the coils. This problem can be solved by integrating the filter in a cabinet or similar.

■ Ordering numbers, LC filter modules Mains supply 3 x 200-240 V

High overload	torque					
LC filter for	LC filter	Rated	Max. torque at	Max. output	Power	Ordering
VLT type	enclosure	current at 200 V	CT/VT	frequency	dissipation	no.
5001-5003	Bookstyle IP 20	7.8 A	160%	120 Hz		175Z0825
5004-5006	Bookstyle IP 20	15.2 A	160%	120 Hz		175Z0826
5001-5006	Compact IP 20	15.2 A	160%	120 Hz		175Z0832
5008	Compact IP 00	25 A	160%	60 Hz	85 W	175Z4600
5011	Compact IP 00	32 A	160%	60 Hz	90 W	175Z4601
5016	Compact IP 00	46 A	160%	60 Hz	110 W	175Z4602
5022	Compact IP 00	61 A	160%	60 Hz	170 W	175Z4603
5027	Compact IP 00	73 A	160%	60 Hz	250 W	175Z4604
5032	Compact IP 20	88 A	150 %	60 Hz		175Z4700
5045	Compact IP 20	115 A	150 %	60 Hz		175Z4702
5052	Compact IP 20	143 A	150 %	60 Hz		175Z4702
Normal overloa	ad torque					
5008	Compact IP 00	32 A	110%	60 Hz	90 W	175Z4601
5011	Compact IP 00	46 A	110%	60 Hz	110 W	175Z4602
5016	Compact IP 00	61 A	110%	60 Hz	170 W	175Z4603
5022	Compact IP 00	73 A	110%	60 Hz	250 W	175Z4604
5027	Compact IP 00	88 A	110%	60 Hz	320 W	175Z4605
5032	Compact IP 20	115 A	110 %	60 Hz		175Z4702
5042	Compact IP 20	143 A	110 %	60 Hz		175Z4702
5052	Compact IP 20	170 A	110 %	60 Hz	·	175Z4703



NB!:

When using LC-filters, the switching frequency must be 4.5 kHz (see parameter 411).



Mains supply 3 x 380 - 500 V

LC filter for VLT	LC filter	Rated current at	Max. torque at	Max. output	Power	Ordering
type	enclosure	400/500 V	CT/VT	frequency	dissipation	no.
5001-5005	Bookstyle IP 20	7.2 A / 6.3 A	160%	120 Hz		175Z0825
5006-5011	Bookstyle IP 20	16 A / 14.5 A	160%	120 Hz		175Z0826
5001-5011	Compact IP 20	16 A / 14.5 A	160%	120 Hz		175Z0832
5016	Compact IP 00	24 A / 21.7 A	160%	60 Hz	125 W	175Z4606
5022	Compact IP 00	32 A / 27.9 A	160%	60 Hz	130 W	175Z4607
5027	Compact IP 00	37.5 A / 32 A	160%	60 Hz	140 W	175Z4608
5032	Compact IP 00	44 A / 41.4 A	160%	60 Hz	170 W	175Z4609
5042	Compact IP 00	61 A / 54 A	160%	60 Hz	250 W	175Z4610
5052	Compact IP 00	73 A / 65 A	160%	60 Hz	360 W	175Z4611
5062	Compact IP 20	90 A / 80 A	150 %	60 Hz	320 W	175Z4700
5072	Compact IP 20	106 A / 106 A	150 %	60 Hz	400 W	175Z4701
5102	Compact IP 20	147 A / 130 A	150 %	60 Hz	500 W	175Z4702
5122	Compact IP 20	177 A / 160 A	150 %	60 Hz	650 W	175Z4703
5152	Compact IP 20	212 A / 190 A	150 %	60 Hz	650 W	175Z4704
5202	Compact IP 20	260 A / 240 A	150 %	60 Hz	750 W	175Z4705
5252	Compact IP 20	315 A / 302 A	150 %	60 Hz	850 W	175Z4706
5302	Compact IP 20	395 A / 361 A	150 %	60 Hz	850 W	175Z4707
5350	Compact IP 20	480 A / 443 A	150 %	60 Hz		175Z3139
5450	Compact IP 20	600 A / 540 A	150 %	60 Hz		175Z3140
5500	Compact IP 20	658 A / 590 A	150 %	60 Hz		175Z3141
Normal overload	torque					
5016	Compact IP 00	32 A / 27.9 A	110%	60 Hz	130 W	175Z4607
5022	Compact IP 00	37.5 A / 32 A	110%	60 Hz	140 W	175Z4608
5027	Compact IP 00	44 A / 41.4 A	110%	60 Hz	170 W	175Z4609
5032	Compact IP 00	61 A / 54 A	110%	60 Hz	250 W	175Z4610
5042	Compact IP 00	73 A / 65 A	110%	60 Hz	360 W	175Z4611
5052	Compact IP 00	90 A / 78 A	110%	60 Hz	450 W	175Z4612
5062	Compact IP 20	106 A / 106 A	110 %	60 Hz	400 W	175Z4701
5072	Compact IP 20	147 A / 130 A	110 %	60 Hz	500 W	175Z4702
5102	Compact IP 20	177 A / 160 A	110 %	60 Hz	650 W	175Z4703
5122	Compact IP 20	212 A / 190 A	110 %	60 Hz	650 W	175Z4704
5152	Compact IP 20	260 A / 240 A	110 %	60 Hz	750 W	175Z4705
5202	Compact IP 20	315 A / 302 A	110 %	60 Hz	850 W	175Z4706
5252	Compact IP 20	368 A / 361 A	110 %	60 Hz	850 W	175Z4707
5302	Compact IP 20	480 A / 443 A	110 %	60 Hz		175Z3139
5350	Compact IP 20	600 A / 540 A	110 %	60 Hz		175Z3140
5450	Compact IP 20	658 A / 590 A	110 %	60 Hz		175Z3141
5500	Compact IP 20	745 A / 678 A	110 %	60 Hz		175Z3142

LC filters for VLT 5001-5250, 525 - 600 V, please contact Danfoss.



NB!

When using LC-filters, the switching frequency must be 4.5 kHz (see parameter 411).



Mains supply 3 x 690 V								
160% overload	4400/	Rated Current at 690	Max. output	Power	0 1 1 1000	Ordering no.		
torque	110% overload torque	V	frequency (Hz)	dissipation (W)	Ordering no. IP00	IP20		
5042		46	60	240	130B2223	130B2258		
5052	5042	54	60	290	130B2223	130B2258		
5062	5052	73	60	390	130B2225	130B2260		
5072	5062	86	60	480	130B2225	130B2260		
5102	5072	108	60	600	130B2226	130B2261		
5122	5102	131	60	550	130B2228	130B2263		
5152	5122	155	60	680	130B2228	130B2263		
5202	5152	192	60	920	130B2229	130B2264		
5252	5202	242	60	750	130B2231	130B2266		
5302	5252	290	60	1000	130B2231	130B2266		
5352	5302	344	60	1050	130B2232	130B2267		
	5352	400	60	1150	130B2234	130B2269		

dU/dt filters for VLT 5000

The dU/dt filters reduce dU/dt to approx. 500 V / $\mu sec.$ These filters do not reduce noise or Upeak.



NB!:

When using dU/dt filters, the switching frequency must be 1.5 kHz (see parameter 411).

Mains supply 3 x 690 V							
160% overload	4400/	Rated Current at 690	Max. output	Power	0 1 1 10 00	Ordering no.	
torque	110% overload torque	V	frequency (Hz)	dissipation (W)	Ordering no. IP 00	IP20	
5042		46	60	85	130B2153	130B2187	
5052	5042	54	60	90	130B2154	130B2188	
5062	5052	73	60	100	130B2155	130B2189	
5072	5062	86	60	110	130B2156	130B2190	
5102	5072	108	60	120	130B2157	130B2191	
5122	5102	131	60	150	130B2158	130B2192	
5152	5102	155	60	180	130B2159	130B2193	
5202	5152	192	60	190	130B2160	130B2194	
5252	5202	242	60	210	130B2161	130B2195	
5302	5252	290	60	350	130B2162	130B2196	
5352	5302	344	60	480	130B2163	130B2197	
	5352	400	60	540	130B2165	130B2199	



■ Brake resistors, VLT 5001 - 5052 / 200 - 240 V

Standard brake resistors

	10% duty cycl	е			40% duty cycl	е
	Resistance	Power	Code No.	Resistance	Power	Code No.
VLT	[ohm]	[kW]		[ohm]	[kW]	
5001	145	0.065	175U1820	145	0.260	175U1920
5002	90	0.095	175U1821	90	0.430	175U1921
5003	65	0.250	175U1822	65	0.80	175U1922
5004	50	0.285	175U1823	50	1.00	175U1923
5005	35	0.430	175U1824	35	1.35	175U1924
5006	25	0.8	175U1825	25	3.00	175U1925
5008	20	1.0	175U1826	20	3.50	175U1926
5011	15	1.8	175U1827	15	5.00	175U1927
5016	10	2.8	175U1828	10	9.0	175U1928
5022	7	4.0	175U1829	7	10.0	175U1929
5027	6	4.8	175U1830	6	12.7	175U1930
5032	4.7	6	175U1954	Not available	Not available	Not available
5042	3.3	8	175U1955	Not available	Not available	Not available
5052	2.7	10	175U1956	Not available	Not available	Not available

See instruction MI.90.FX.YY for further information.

Flatpack brake resistors for horizontal conveyors

VLT type	Motor [kW]	Resistor [ohm]	Size	Order number	Max. duty cycle [%]
5001	0.75	150	150 Ω 100 W	175U1005	14.0
5001	0.75	150	150 Ω 200 W	175U0989	40.0
5002	1.1	100	100 Ω 100 W	175U1006	8.0
5002	1.1	100	100 Ω 200 W	175U0991	20.0
5003	1.5	72	72 Ω 200 W	175U0992	16.0
5004	2.2	47	50 Ω 200 W	175U0993	9.0
5005	3	35	35 Ω 200 W	175U0994	5.5
5005	3	35	72 Ω 200 W	2 x 175U0992 ¹	12.0
5006	4	25	50 Ω 200 W	2 x 175U0993 ¹	11.0
5008	5.5	20	40 Ω 200 W	2 x 175U0996 ¹	6.5
5011	7.5	13	27 Ω 200 W	2 x 175U0995 ¹	4.0

^{1.} Order 2 pcs.

Mounting angle for flatpack resistor 100 W 175U0011 Mounting frame for 2 resistors narrow (slim bookstyle) Mounting angle for flatpack resistor 200 W 175U0009 175U0004

Mounting frame for 1 resistor narrow (slim bookstyle) Mounting frame for 2 resistors broad (wide bookstyle) 175U0002 175U0003

See Instruction MI.50.BX.YY for further information.



■ Ordering numbers, Brake resistors, VLT 5001 - 5500 / 380 - 500 V

Standard brake resistors

		10% duty	cycle		40% duty	cycle
	Resistance	Power	Code No.	Resistance	Power	Code No.
VLT	[ohm]	[kW]		[ohm]	[kW]	
5001	620	0.065	175U1840	620	0.260	175U1940
5002	425	0.095	175U1841	425	0.430	175U1941
5003	310	0.250	175U1842	310	0.80	175U1942
5004	210	0.285	175U1843	210	1.35	175U1943
5005	150	0.430	175U1844	150	2.0	175U1944
5006	110	0.60	175U1845	110	2.4	175U1945
5008	80	0.85	175U1846	80	3.0	175U1946
5011	65	1.0	175U1847	65	4.5	175U1947
5016	40	1.8	175U1848	40	5.0	175U1948
5022	30	2.8	175U1849	30	9.3	175U1949
5027	25	3.5	175U1850	25	12.7	175U1950
5032	20	4.0	175U1851	20	13.0	175U1951
5042	15	4.8	175U1852	15	15.6	175U1952
5052	12	5.5	175U1853	12	19.0	175U1953
5062	9.8	15	175U2008	9.8	38.0	175U2008
5072	7.3	13	175U0069	5.7	38.0	175U0068
5102	5.7	15	175U0067	4.7	45.0	175U0066
5122 ²⁾	3.8	22	175U1960			
5152 ²⁾	3.2	27	175U1961			
5202 ²⁾	2.6	32	175U1962			
5252 ²⁾	2.1	39	175U1963			
53022)	1.65	56	2 x 175U1061 ¹⁾			
5350 ²⁾	2.6	72	2 x 175U1062 ¹⁾		<u> </u>	<u> </u>
5450 ²⁾	2.3	90	2 x 175U1063 ¹⁾			·
5500 ²⁾	2.1	100	2 x175U1064 ¹⁾		•	_

- 1. Order 2 pcs.
- 2. Designed for 300 second cycle.

See Instruction MI.90.FX.YY for further information.

Flatpack brake resistors for horizontal conveyors

VLT type	Motor [kW]	Resistor [ohm]	Size	Order number	Max. duty cycle [%]
5001	0.75	630	620 Ω 100 W	175U1001	14.0
5001	0.75	630	620 Ω 200 W	175U0982	40.0
5002	1.1	430	430 Ω 100 W	175U1002	8.0
5002	1.1	430	430 Ω 200 W	175U0983	20.0
5003	1.5	320	310 Ω 200 W	175U0984	16.0
5004	2.2	215	210 Ω 200 W	175U0987	9.0
5005	3	150	150 Ω 200 W	175U0989	5.5
5005	3	150	300 Ω 200 W	2 x 175U0985 ¹	12.0
5006	4	120	240 Ω 200 W	2 x 175U0986 ¹	11.0
5008	5.5	82	160 Ω 200 W	2 x 175U0988 ¹	6.5
5011	7.5	65	130 Ω 200 W	2 x 175U0990 ¹	4.0

1. Order 2 pcs.

Mounting angle for flatpack resistor 100 W 175U0011.

Mounting angle for flatpack resistor 200 W 175U0009.

Mounting frame for 1 resistor narrow (slim bookstyle) 175U0002.

Mounting frame for 2 resistors narrow (slim bookstyle) 175U0004.

Mounting frame for 2 resistors broad (wide bookstyle) 175U0003.

See Instruction MI.50.BX.YY for further information.

For VLT 5001-5062, 550-600 V please contact Danfoss.



■ Ordering numbers, Harmonic filters

Harmonic filters are used to reduce mains harmonics

AHF 010: 10% current distortionAHF 005: 5% current distortion

380-415 V, 50Hz

I _{AHF.N}	Typical Motor Used	Danfoss ordering nu	Danfoss ordering number		
,	[kW]	AHF 005	AHF 010		
10 A	4, 5.5	175G6600	175G6622	5006, 5008	
19 A	7.5	175G6601	175G6623	5011	
26 A	11	175G6602	175G6624	5016	
35 A	15, 18.5	175G6603	175G6625	5022, 5027	
43 A	22	175G6604	175G6626	5032	
72 A	30, 37	175G6605	175G6627	5042, 5052	
101 A	45. 55	175G6606	175G6628	5062, 5072	
144 A	75	175G6607	175G6629	5102	
180 A	90	175G6608	175G6630	5122	
217 A	110	175G6609	175G6631	5152	
289 A	132, 160	175G6610	175G6632	5202, 5252	
324 A		175G6611	175G6633		
370 A	200	175G6688	175G6691	5302	
Higher ratings can be	e achieved by paralleling the fi	Iter units			
434 A	250	Two 217 A units		5350	
578 A	315	Two	Two 289 A units		
613 A	355	289 A a	nd 324 A units	5500	

Please note that the matching of the typical Danfoss frequency converter and filter is pre-calculated based on 400 V and assuming typical motor load (4 or 2 pole motor): VLT 5000 series is based on a max. 160 % torque application. The pre-calculated filter current may be different than the input current ratings of VLT 5000 as stated in the respective operating instructions, as these numbers are based on different operating conditions.

440-480 V, 60Hz

I _{AHF,N}	Typical Motor Used	Danfoss ordering number		VLT 5000	
,	[HP]	AHF 005	AHF 010		
19 A	10, 15	175G6612	175G6634	5011, 5016	
26 A	20	175G6613	175G6635	5022	
35 A	25, 30	175G6614	175G6636	5027, 5032	
43 A	40	175G6615	175G6637	5042	
72 A	50, 60	175G6616	175G6638	5052, 5062	
101 A	75	175G6617	175G6639	5072	
144 A	100, 125	175G6618	175G6640	5102, 5122	
180 A	150	175G6619	175G6641	5152	
217 A	200	175G6620	175G6642	5202	
289 A	250	175G6621	175G6643	5252	
324 A	300	175G6689	175G6692	5302	
370 A	350	175G6690	175G6693	5350	
Higher ratings can be	achieved by paralleling the fi	ter units			
506 A	450	217 A a	nd 289 A units	5450	
578 A	500	Two	289 A units	5500	
648 A	600	Two	325 A units	-	

Please note that the matching of the typical Danfoss frequency converter and filter is pre-calculated based on 480 V and assuming typical motor load (4 or 2 pole motor): VLT 5000 series is based on a max. 160 % torque application. The pre-calculated filter current may be different than the input current ratings of VLT 5000 as stated in the respective operating instructions, as these numbers are based on different operating conditions.



500 V, 50 Hz

I _{AHF,N}	Typical Motor Used	Danfoss ordering num	Danfoss ordering number	
,	[kW]	AHF 005	AHF 010	
10 A	4, 5,5	175G6644	175G6656	5006, 5008
19 A	7.5, 11	175G6645	175G6634	5011, 5016
26 A	15, 18.5	175G6646	175G6635	5022, 5027
35 A	22	175G6647	175G6636	5032
43 A	30	175G6648	175G6637	5042
72 A	37, 45	175G6649	175G6638	5052, 5062
101 A	55, 75	175G6650	175G6639	5062, 5072
144 A	90, 110	175G6651	175G6640	5102, 5122
180 A	132	175G6652	175G6641	5152
217 A	160	175G6653	175G6642	5202
289 A	200	175G6654	175G6643	5252
324 A	250	175G6655	175G6692	5302
Higher ratings can be ach	nieved by paralleling the filt	ter units		
434 A	315	Two 21	7 A units	5350
469 A	355	180 A an	d 289 units	5450
578 A	400	Two 28	39 A units	5500

Please note that the matching of the typical Danfoss frequency converter and filter is pre-calculated based on 500 V and assuming typical motor load. VLT 5000 series is based on a 160 % torque application. The pre-calculated filter current may be varying from the input current ratings of VLT 5000 as stated in the respective operating instructions, as these numbers are based on different operating conditions. For further combinations, please consult MG.80.BX.YY.

690 V, 50 Hz

I AHF,N	Typical motor used	Ordering no. AHF	Ordering no. AHF	VLT 5000 160%	VLT 5000 110%
	(kW)	005	010		
43	37, 45	130B2328	130B2293	5042, 5042	5042
72	55, 75	130B2330	130B2295	5062, 5072	5052, 5062
101	90	130B2331	130B2296	5102	5072
144	110, 132	130B2333	130B2298	5122, 5152	5102, 5122
180	160	130B2334	130B2299	5202	5152
217	200	130B2335	130B2300	5252	5202
289	250	130B2331 &	130B2301	5302	5252
		130B2333			
324	315	130B2333 &	130B2302	5352	5302
		130B2334			
370	400	130B2334 &	130B2304		5352
		130B2335			



■ General technical data

Mains supply (L1, L2, L3):	
Supply voltage 200-240 V units	3 x 200/208/220/230/240 V ±10%
Supply voltage 380-500 V units	
Supply voltage 525-600 V units	
Supply voltage 525-690 V units	
Supply frequency	
See the section on special conditions in the Design Guide	40-02 112 47- 1 /0
Max imbalance of supply voltage:	
VLT 5001-5011, 380-500 V and 525-600 V and VLT 5001-5006, 200-240 V .	±2.0% of rated supply voltage
VLT 5016-5062, 380-500 V and 525-600 V and VLT 5008-5027, 200-240 V .	±1.5% of rated supply voltage
VLT 5072-5500, 380-500 V and VLT 5032-5052, 200-240 V	±3.0% of rated supply voltage
VLT 5042-5352, 525-690 V	±3.0% of rated supply voltage
True Power factor (λ)	0.90 nominal at rated load
Displacement Power Factor (cos φ)	near unity (>0.98)
No. of switchings on supply input L1, L2, L3	approx. 1 time/min.
See the section on special conditions in the Design Guide	
VLT output data (U, V, W):	
Output voltage	0-100% of supply voltage
Output frequency VLT 5001-5027, 200-240 V	0-132 Hz, 0-1000 Hz
Output frequency VLT 5032-5052, 200-240 V	0-132 Hz, 0-450 Hz
Output frequency VLT 5001-5052, 380-500 V	0-132 Hz, 0-1000 Hz
Output frequency VLT 5062-5500, 380-500 V	0-132 Hz, 0-450 Hz
Output frequency VLT 5001-5011, 525-600 V	0-132 Hz, 0-700 Hz
Output frequency VLT 5016-5052, 525-600 V	
Output frequency VLT 5062, 525-600 V	
Output frequency VLT 5042-5302, 525-690 V	
Output frequency VLT 5352, 525-690 V	
Rated motor voltage, 200-240 V units	
Rated motor voltage, 380-500 V units	
Rated motor voltage, 525-600 V units	
Rated motor voltage, 525-690 V units	
Rated motor frequency	
Switching on output	
Ramp times	
Torque characteristics:	
Starting torque, VLT 5001-5027, 200-240 V and VLT 5001-5302, 380-500 V	
Starting torque, VLT 5032-5052, 200-240 V and VLT 5350-5500, 380-500 V	
Starting torque, VLT 5001-5062, 525-600 V	
Starting torque, VLT 5042-5352, 525-690 V	
Starting torque	
Acceleration torque	
Overload torque, VLT 5001-5027, 200-240 V and VLT 5001-5302, 380-500	
VLT 5001-5062, 525-600 V, and VLT 5042-5352, 525-690 V	
Overload torque, VLT 5032-5052, 200-240 V and VLT 5350-5500, 380-500 V	
Arresting torque at 0 rpm (closed loop)	
The torque characteristics given are for the frequency converter at the high o	
(160%). At the normal overload torque (110%), the values are lower.	various torque level
110070j. The the Horrital eventual terque (11070j, the values are 1000cl.	



	Cycle time (s)	Braking duty cycle at 100% torque	Braking duty cycle at over torque (150/160%)
200-240 V		•	, , ,
5001-5027	120	Continuous	40%
5032-5052	300	10%	10%
380-500 V			
5001-5102	120	Continuous	40%
5122-5252	600	Continuous	10%
5302	600	40%	10%
5350-5500	300	10%	10%
525-600 V			
5001-5062	120	Continuous	40%
525-690 V	0	00.110000	.6,0
5042-5352	600	40%	10%
Terminal nos	nable digital inputs		16, 17, 18, 19, 27, 29, 32, 3
•			0-24 V DC (PNP positive logic
			< 5 V D
Voltage level, logical	'1'		>10 V D
Maximum voltage on	input		28 V D
	•		
Input resistance, R_i .	•		2 ks
Scanning time per inp Reliable galvanic isola the digital inputs can	putation: All digital inputs a		
Scanning time per inposer in Reliable galvanic isolathe digital inputs can 24 V DC supply and Control card, analogono. Of programmable	put ation: All digital inputs a be isolated from the or opening switch 4. VLT gue inputs: analogue voltage input	re galvanically isolated from the sther terminals on the control card 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not	
Scanning time per inpresent the digital inputs can 24 V DC supply and Control card, analog No. of programmable Terminal nos	put	re galvanically isolated from the state terminals on the control card 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not ts/thermistor inputs	
Scanning time per inpresent the digital inputs cand 24 V DC supply and Control card, analog No. of programmable Terminal nos.	put	re galvanically isolated from the state terminals on the control card 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not ts/thermistor inputs	3 mse supply voltage (PELV). In addition, d by connecting an external meet PELV. 53, 5
Scanning time per inpresent the digital inputs can 24 V DC supply and Control card, analog No. of programmable Terminal nos	put ation: All digital inputs a be isolated from the or opening switch 4. VLT gue inputs: analogue voltage input	re galvanically isolated from the sther terminals on the control card 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not ts/thermistor inputs	3 mse supply voltage (PELV). In addition, d by connecting an external meet PELV. 53, 5
Scanning time per inpresent solar scanning time per inpresent solar scanning time per inpresent solar scanning time digital inputs canning to the digital inputs and control card, analogous to the scanning time time time time time time time time	put ation: All digital inputs a be isolated from the oil opening switch 4. VLT gue inputs: e analogue voltage inpute	re galvanically isolated from the sther terminals on the control card 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not ts/thermistor inputs	3 mse supply voltage (PELV). In addition, d by connecting an external meet PELV. 53, 5
Scanning time per inpresent solar section of the digital inputs can section of the digital inputs can section of the digital input and section of the digital input and section of the digital input resistance, Ringust resistance, Ringust reminal no.	put	re galvanically isolated from the state terminals on the control card 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not ts/thermistor inputs	3 mse supply voltage (PELV). In addition, d by connecting an external meet PELV. 53, 5
Scanning time per inpresent solar scanning time to solar scanning time time time time time time time time	put	re galvanically isolated from the state terminals on the control card 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not ts/thermistor inputs	3 mse supply voltage (PELV). In addition, d by connecting an external meet PELV. 53, 5
Scanning time per inpresent solar the digital inputs can 24 V DC supply and Control card, analog No. of programmable Terminal nos	put ation: All digital inputs a be isolated from the or opening switch 4. VLT gue inputs: e analogue voltage inpute	re galvanically isolated from the sther terminals on the control card 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not ts/thermistor inputs	3 mse supply voltage (PELV). In addition, d by connecting an external meet PELV. 53, 5
Scanning time per inpresent per inpresent per inpresent per inputs can alog the digital inputs can alog the digital inputs can alog the digital input and the control card, analog the programmable and the control card, analog the c	put	re galvanically isolated from the state terminals on the control card 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not ts/thermistor inputs	3 mse supply voltage (PELV). In addition, d by connecting an external meet PELV. 53, 5
Scanning time per inpresent the digital inputs cand the digital inputs cand the digital inputs cand the digital inputs cand the digital inputs and the control card, analogous No. of programmable the control card, analogous No. of programmable the control card, analogous No. of programmable the control card input resistance, Richard input input input input input input input input input resistance input	put	re galvanically isolated from the state terminals on the control card 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not ts/thermistor inputs	3 mse supply voltage (PELV). In addition, d by connecting an external meet PELV. 53, 5
Scanning time per inpresent the digital inputs cand the digital inputs cand the digital inputs cand the digital inputs cand the digital inputs and the control card, analogous No. of programmable the control card, analogous No. of programmable the control card, analogous No. of programmable the control card input resistance, Richard input resistance, Richard input resistance, Richard input resistance, Richard input in	put	re galvanically isolated from the state terminals on the control card 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not ts/thermistor inputs	3 mse supply voltage (PELV). In addition, d by connecting an external meet PELV. 53, 5
Scanning time per inpresent the digital inputs cand the digital inputs cand the digital inputs cand the digital inputs cand the digital inputs and the digital inputs and the control card, analog the control card, analog the control card, analog the control card, analog to the control card, analog to the control card, analog to the control card, analog the control card, analog the control card, analog the control card, analog time per input card, analog time the card	put	re galvanically isolated from the sther terminals on the control cant 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not ts/thermistor inputs	3 mse supply voltage (PELV). In addition, d by connecting an external meet PELV. 53, 5
Scanning time per inpresent in the digital inputs can set to digital inputs can set to DC supply and set to DC sup	put	re galvanically isolated from the sther terminals on the control cant 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not ts/thermistor inputs	3 mse supply voltage (PELV). In addition, d by connecting an external meet PELV. 53, \$\frac{1}{2}\$
Scanning time per inpresent the digital inputs cand the digital inputs cand the digital inputs cand the digital inputs cand the digital inputs and the control card, analog the control card input resistance, Richard in the control card in the card in the control card in the	put	re galvanically isolated from the state terminals on the control card 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not ts/thermistor inputs	3 mse supply voltage (PELV). In addition, d by connecting an external meet PELV. 53, 5
Scanning time per inpresentation in the digital inputs cand the digital inputs cand the digital inputs cand the digital inputs cand the digital inputs and the control card, analog the control card, analog the control card, analog the control card, analog to the control card, analog the control card, analog the control card input resistance, Richard in the control card input resistance, Richard in the control card input resistance, Richard input resistance, Richard in the control card in the card i	put	re galvanically isolated from the state terminals on the control card 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not ts/thermistor inputs	3 mse supply voltage (PELV). In addition, d by connecting an external meet PELV. 53, 5
Scanning time per inpresentation of programmable stance, Riman and control card, analogo and control card, pulse/control car	put	re galvanically isolated from the state terminals on the control card 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not ts/thermistor inputs	3 mse supply voltage (PELV). In addition, d by connecting an external meet PELV. 53, 5
Scanning time per inpresentation of programmable scanning time per inputs can analog the digital inputs can analog to the digital inputs can analog to the digital inputs and analog to the digital input and the digital input resistance, Ri . No. of programmable terminal no. Current range	put	re galvanically isolated from the state terminals on the control cand 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not ts/thermistor inputs	53, 5
Scanning time per inpresentation of programmable stance, Richard resistance, Richard r	put	re galvanically isolated from the state terminals on the control card 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not ts/thermistor inputs	3 mse supply voltage (PELV). In addition, d by connecting an external meet PELV. 53, 5
Scanning time per inpresentable galvanic isolate the digital inputs canded V DC supply and Control card, analogonal No. of programmable Terminal nos. No. of programmable Terminal no. No. of programmable Terminal no. Current range	put	re galvanically isolated from the state terminals on the control card 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not ts/thermistor inputs	3 mse supply voltage (PELV). In addition, d by connecting an external meet PELV. 53, 5



VOHAGE IEVEL TOUTAL T	>10 V DC
Maximum voltage on input	
Input resistance, R _i	2 kΩ
Scanning time per input	3 msec.
Resolution	
Accuracy (100-1 kHz), terminals 17, 29, 33	_
Accuracy (1-5 kHz), terminal 17	
Accuracy (1-65 kHz), terminals 29, 33	
Reliable galvanic isolation: All pulse/encoder inputs are galvanically isola	
(PELV)*. In addition, pulse and encoder inputs can be isolated from the	
card by connecting an external 24 V DC supply and opening switch 4	
* VLT 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not meet PELV.	
Control card, digital/pulse and analogue outputs:	
No. of programmable digital and analogue outputs	2
Terminal nos.	
Voltage level at digital/pulse output	
Minimum load to ground (terminal 39) at digital/pulse output	
Frequency ranges (digital output used as pulse output)	
Current range at analogue output	
Maximum load to ground (terminal 39) at analogue output	
Accuracy of analogue output	
Resolution on analogue output	
Reliable galvanic isolation: All digital and analogue outputs are galvanic	ally solated from the
supply voltage (PELV)*, as well as other inputs and outputs.	
* VLT 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not meet PELV.	
Control card, 24 V DC supply:	
Terminal nos.	
Nax. load (short-circuit protection)	,
·	
Terminal nos. ground	
Reliable galvanic isolation: The 24 V DC supply is galvanically isolated	from the supply vollage
(PELV)*, but has the same potential as the analogue outputs.	
•	
* VLT 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not meet PELV.	
•	
* VLT 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not meet PELV.	68 (TX+, RX+), 69 (TX-, RX-)
* VLT 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not meet PELV. Control card, RS 485 serial communication:	68 (TX+, RX+), 69 (TX-, RX-)
* VLT 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not meet PELV. Control card, RS 485 serial communication: Terminal nos. Reliable galvanic isolation: Full galvanic isolation. Relay outputs: 1)	
* VLT 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not meet PELV. Control card, RS 485 serial communication: Terminal nos. Reliable galvanic isolation: Full galvanic isolation. Relay outputs: 1)	
* VLT 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not meet PELV. Control card, RS 485 serial communication: Terminal nos. Reliable galvanic isolation: Full galvanic isolation. Relay outputs:1)	
* VLT 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not meet PELV. Control card, RS 485 serial communication: Terminal nos. Reliable galvanic isolation: Full galvanic isolation. Relay outputs:1) No. of programmable relay outputs Terminal nos., control card (resistive load only) Max. terminal load (AC1) on 4-5, control card	
* VLT 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not meet PELV. Control card, RS 485 serial communication: Terminal nos. Reliable galvanic isolation: Full galvanic isolation. Relay outputs:1) No. of programmable relay outputs Terminal nos., control card (resistive load only) Max. terminal load (AC1) on 4-5, control card	
* VLT 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not meet PELV. Control card, RS 485 serial communication: Terminal nos. Reliable galvanic isolation: Full galvanic isolation. Relay outputs:1) No. of programmable relay outputs Terminal nos., control card (resistive load only) Max. terminal load (AC1) on 4-5, control card Max. terminal load (DC1 (IEC 947)) on 4-5, control card	
* VLT 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not meet PELV. Control card, RS 485 serial communication: Terminal nos. Reliable galvanic isolation: Full galvanic isolation. Relay outputs: 1) No. of programmable relay outputs Terminal nos., control card (resistive load only) Max. terminal load (AC1) on 4-5, control card Max. terminal load (DC1 (IEC 947)) on 4-5, control card Max. terminal load (DC1) on 4-5, control card for UL/cUL applications	
* VLT 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not meet PELV. Control card, RS 485 serial communication: Terminal nos. Reliable galvanic isolation: Full galvanic isolation. Relay outputs: 1) No. of programmable relay outputs Terminal nos., control card (resistive load only) Max. terminal load (AC1) on 4-5, control card Max. terminal load (DC1 (IEC 947)) on 4-5, control card Max. terminal load (DC1) on 4-5, control card for UL/cUL applications Terminal nos., power card (resistive and inductive load)	25 V DC, 2 A / 50 V DC, 1 A, 50 W
* VLT 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not meet PELV. Control card, RS 485 serial communication: Terminal nos. Reliable galvanic isolation: Full galvanic isolation. Relay outputs:1) No. of programmable relay outputs Terminal nos., control card (resistive load only) Max. terminal load (AC1) on 4-5, control card Max. terminal load (DC1 (IEC 947)) on 4-5, control card	
* VLT 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not meet PELV. Control card, RS 485 serial communication: Terminal nos. Reliable galvanic isolation: Full galvanic isolation. Relay outputs:1) No. of programmable relay outputs Terminal nos., control card (resistive load only) Max. terminal load (AC1) on 4-5, control card Max. terminal load (DC1 (IEC 947)) on 4-5, control card Max. terminal load (DC1) on 4-5, control card for UL/cUL applications Terminal nos., power card (resistive and inductive load) Max. terminal load (AC1) on 1-3, 1-2, power card Max. terminal load (DC1 (IEC 947)) on 1-3, 1-2, power card	
* VLT 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not meet PELV. Control card, RS 485 serial communication: Terminal nos. Reliable galvanic isolation: Full galvanic isolation. Relay outputs: 1) No. of programmable relay outputs Terminal nos., control card (resistive load only) Max. terminal load (AC1) on 4-5, control card Max. terminal load (DC1 (IEC 947)) on 4-5, control card	
* VLT 5001-5062, 525-600 V do not meet PELV. Control card, RS 485 serial communication: Terminal nos. Reliable galvanic isolation: Full galvanic isolation. Relay outputs:1) No. of programmable relay outputs Terminal nos., control card (resistive load only) Max. terminal load (AC1) on 4-5, control card Max. terminal load (DC1 (IEC 947)) on 4-5, control card Max. terminal load (DC1) on 4-5, control card for UL/cUL applications Terminal nos., power card (resistive and inductive load) Max. terminal load (AC1) on 1-3, 1-2, power card Max. terminal load (DC1 (IEC 947)) on 1-3, 1-2, power card	2 4-5 (make) 50 V AC, 1 A, 50 VA 25 V DC, 2 A / 50 V DC, 1 A, 50 W 30 V AC, 1 A / 42.5 V DC, 1A 1-3 (break), 1-2 (make) 250 V AC, 2 A, 500 VA 25 V DC, 2 A / 50 V DC, 1A, 50 W 24 V DC, 10 mA / 24 V AC, 100 mA

At inductive loads the number of operations are reduced by 50%, alternatively the current can be reduced by

50%, thus the 300,000 operations are maintained.



Terrinal nos	81, 82
10111111011100	81, 82
External 24 Volt DC supply:	
5 5	
- · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
·	
Reliable galvanic isolation: Full galvanic isolation if the	
Cable lengths, cross-sections and connectors:	
Max. motor cable length, screened cable	150 m
Max. motor cable length, unscreened cable	300 m
3 ,	30-500 V 100 m
<u> </u>	25-600 V and VLT 5008, normal overload mode, 525-600 50 m
<u> </u>	20 m
Max. cable cross-section for motor, brake and loads	<u>.</u>
Max. cable cross-section for 24 V external DC supply IT 5001 5007 300 340 V; VI T 5001 5103 380 500	•
	0 V; VLT 5001-5062 525-600 V 4 mm² /10 AWG 0 V; VLT 5042-5352 525-690 V 2.5 mm² /12 AWG
, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	
	1.5 mm² /16 AWG
If UL/cUL is to be complied with, copper cable with te	emperature class 60/75°C must be used
(VLT 5001 - 5062 380 - 500 V, 525 - 600 V and VL	T 5001 - 5027 200 - 240 V).
If UL/cUL is to be complied with, copper cable with te	====
	•
(VLT 5072 - 5500 380 - 500 V, VLT 5032 - 5052 200	0 - 240 V, VLT 5042 - 5352 525 - 690 V).
	0 - 240 V, VLT 5042 - 5352 525 - 690 V).
(VLT 5072 - 5500 380 - 500 V, VLT 5032 - 5052 200	0 - 240 V, VLT 5042 - 5352 525 - 690 V).
(VLT 5072 - 5500 380 - 500 V, VLT 5032 - 5052 200 Connectors are for use of both copper and aluminium Accuracy of display readout (parameters 009-012):	0 - 240 V, VLT 5042 - 5352 525 - 690 V). n cables, unless other is specified.
(VLT 5072 - 5500 380 - 500 V, VLT 5032 - 5052 200 Connectors are for use of both copper and aluminium Accuracy of display readout (parameters 009-012): Motor current [6] 0-140% load	0 - 240 V, VLT 5042 - 5352 525 - 690 V). In cables, unless other is specified.
(VLT 5072 - 5500 380 - 500 V, VLT 5032 - 5052 200 Connectors are for use of both copper and aluminium Accuracy of display readout (parameters 009-012): Motor current [6] 0-140% load	0 - 240 V, VLT 5042 - 5352 525 - 690 V). n cables, unless other is specified. Max. error: ±2.0% of rated output current Max. error: ±5% of rated motor size
(VLT 5072 - 5500 380 - 500 V, VLT 5032 - 5052 200 Connectors are for use of both copper and aluminium Accuracy of display readout (parameters 009-012): Motor current [6] 0-140% load	0 - 240 V, VLT 5042 - 5352 525 - 690 V). n cables, unless other is specified. Max. error: ±2.0% of rated output current Max. error: ±5% of rated motor size
(VLT 5072 - 5500 380 - 500 V, VLT 5032 - 5052 200 Connectors are for use of both copper and aluminium Accuracy of display readout (parameters 009-012): Motor current [6] 0-140% load	0 - 240 V, VLT 5042 - 5352 525 - 690 V). n cables, unless other is specified.
(VLT 5072 - 5500 380 - 500 V, VLT 5032 - 5052 200 Connectors are for use of both copper and aluminium Accuracy of display readout (parameters 009-012): Motor current [6] 0-140% load Torque % [7], -100 - 140% load Output [8], power HP [9], 0-90% load Control characteristics: Frequency range Resolution on output frequency	0 - 240 V, VLT 5042 - 5352 525 - 690 V). n cables, unless other is specified. Max. error: ±2.0% of rated output current Max. error: ±5% of rated motor size Max. error: ±5% of rated output 0 - 1000 Hz
(VLT 5072 - 5500 380 - 500 V, VLT 5032 - 5052 200 Connectors are for use of both copper and aluminium Accuracy of display readout (parameters 009-012): Motor current [6] 0-140% load	0 - 240 V, VLT 5042 - 5352 525 - 690 V). n cables, unless other is specified. Max. error: ±2.0% of rated output current Max. error: ±5% of rated motor size Max. error: ±5% of rated output 0 - 1000 Hz ±0.003 Hz 3 msec.
(VLT 5072 - 5500 380 - 500 V, VLT 5032 - 5052 200 Connectors are for use of both copper and aluminium Accuracy of display readout (parameters 009-012): Motor current [6] 0-140% load	0 - 240 V, VLT 5042 - 5352 525 - 690 V). n cables, unless other is specified. Max. error: ±2.0% of rated output current Max. error: ±5% of rated motor size Max. error: ±5% of rated output 0 - 1000 Hz ±0.003 Hz 3 msec. 1:100 of synchro. speed
(VLT 5072 - 5500 380 - 500 V, VLT 5032 - 5052 200 Connectors are for use of both copper and aluminium Accuracy of display readout (parameters 009-012): Motor current [6] 0-140% load	0 - 240 V, VLT 5042 - 5352 525 - 690 V). n cables, unless other is specified. Max. error: ±2.0% of rated output current Max. error: ±5% of rated motor size Max. error: ±5% of rated output 0 - 1000 Hz ±0.003 Hz 3 msec. 1:100 of synchro. speed 1:1000 of synchro. speed
(VLT 5072 - 5500 380 - 500 V, VLT 5032 - 5052 200 Connectors are for use of both copper and aluminium Accuracy of display readout (parameters 009-012): Motor current [6] 0-140% load Torque % [7], -100 - 140% load Output [8], power HP [9], 0-90% load Control characteristics: Frequency range Resolution on output frequency System response time Speed, control range (open loop) Speed, accuracy (open loop)	0 - 240 V, VLT 5042 - 5352 525 - 690 V). n cables, unless other is specified. Max. error: ±2.0% of rated output current Max. error: ±5% of rated motor size Max. error: ±5% of rated output 0 - 1000 Hz ±0.003 Hz 3 msec. 1:100 of synchro. speed 1:1000 of synchro. speed < 1500 rpm: max. error ± 7.5 rpm
(VLT 5072 - 5500 380 - 500 V, VLT 5032 - 5052 200 Connectors are for use of both copper and aluminium Accuracy of display readout (parameters 009-012): Motor current [6] 0-140% load Torque % [7], -100 - 140% load Output [8], power HP [9], 0-90% load Control characteristics: Frequency range Resolution on output frequency System response time Speed, control range (open loop) Speed, accuracy (open loop)	0 - 240 V, VLT 5042 - 5352 525 - 690 V). n cables, unless other is specified. Max. error: ±2.0% of rated output current Max. error: ±5% of rated motor size Max. error: ±5% of rated output 0 - 1000 Hz ±0.003 Hz 3 msec. 1:100 of synchro. speed 1:1000 of synchro. speed < 1500 rpm: max. error ± 7.5 rpm >1500 rpm: max. error of 0.5% of actual speed
(VLT 5072 - 5500 380 - 500 V, VLT 5032 - 5052 200 Connectors are for use of both copper and aluminium Accuracy of display readout (parameters 009-012): Motor current [6] 0-140% load	0 - 240 V, VLT 5042 - 5352 525 - 690 V). n cables, unless other is specified. Max. error: ±2.0% of rated output current Max. error: ±5% of rated motor size Max. error: ±5% of rated output 0 - 1000 Hz ±0.003 Hz 3 msec. 1:100 of synchro. speed 1:1000 of synchro. speed < 1500 rpm: max. error ± 7.5 rpm >1500 rpm: max. error of 0.5% of actual speed < 1500 rpm: max. error ± 1.5 rpm
(VLT 5072 - 5500 380 - 500 V, VLT 5032 - 5052 200 Connectors are for use of both copper and aluminium Accuracy of display readout (parameters 009-012): Motor current [6] 0-140% load	0 - 240 V, VLT 5042 - 5352 525 - 690 V). n cables, unless other is specified. Max. error: ±2.0% of rated output current Max. error: ±5% of rated motor size Max. error: ±5% of rated output 0 - 1000 Hz ±0.003 Hz ±0.003 Hz 1:100 of synchro. speed 1:1000 of synchro. speed < 1500 rpm: max. error ± 7.5 rpm >1500 rpm: max. error of 0.5% of actual speed < 1500 rpm: max. error ± 1.5 rpm >1500 rpm: max. error of 0.1% of actual speed
(VLT 5072 - 5500 380 - 500 V, VLT 5032 - 5052 200 Connectors are for use of both copper and aluminium Accuracy of display readout (parameters 009-012): Motor current [6] 0-140% load Torque % [7], -100 - 140% load Output [8], power HP [9], 0-90% load Control characteristics: Frequency range Resolution on output frequency System response time Speed, control range (open loop) Speed, accuracy (open loop) Speed, accuracy (closed loop) Torque control accuracy (open loop)	0 - 240 V, VLT 5042 - 5352 525 - 690 V). n cables, unless other is specified. Max. error: ±2.0% of rated output current Max. error: ±5% of rated motor size Max. error: ±5% of rated output 0 - 1000 Hz ±0.003 Hz 3 msec. 1:100 of synchro. speed 1:1000 of synchro. speed
(VLT 5072 - 5500 380 - 500 V, VLT 5032 - 5052 200 Connectors are for use of both copper and aluminium Accuracy of display readout (parameters 009-012): Motor current [6] 0-140% load Torque % [7], -100 - 140% load Output [8], power HP [9], 0-90% load Control characteristics: Frequency range Resolution on output frequency System response time Speed, control range (open loop) Speed, accuracy (open loop) Speed, accuracy (closed loop) Torque control accuracy (open loop)	0 - 240 V, VLT 5042 - 5352 525 - 690 V). n cables, unless other is specified. Max. error: ±2.0% of rated output current Max. error: ±5% of rated motor size Max. error: ±5% of rated output 0 - 1000 Hz ±0.003 Hz ±0.003 Hz 1:1000 of synchro. speed 1:1000 of synchro. speed 1:1000 of synchro. speed >1500 rpm: max. error ± 7.5 rpm >1500 rpm: max. error of 0.5% of actual speed >1500 rpm: max. error ± 1.5 rpm >1500 rpm: max. error ± 20% of rated torque 150-1500 rpm: max. error ±20% of rated torque >1500 rpm: max. error ±20% of rated torque
(VLT 5072 - 5500 380 - 500 V, VLT 5032 - 5052 200 Connectors are for use of both copper and aluminium Accuracy of display readout (parameters 009-012): Motor current [6] 0-140% load Torque % [7], -100 - 140% load Output [8], power HP [9], 0-90% load Control characteristics: Frequency range Resolution on output frequency System response time Speed, control range (open loop) Speed, accuracy (open loop) Speed, accuracy (closed loop) Torque control accuracy (open loop) Torque control accuracy (speed feedback)	0 - 240 V, VLT 5042 - 5352 525 - 690 V). n cables, unless other is specified. Max. error: ±2.0% of rated output current Max. error: ±5% of rated motor size Max. error: ±5% of rated output 0 - 1000 Hz ±0.003 Hz 3 msec. 1:100 of synchro. speed 1:1000 of synchro. speed 1:1000 of synchro. speed < 1500 rpm: max. error ± 7.5 rpm >1500 rpm: max. error of 0.5% of actual speed < 1500 rpm: max. error ± 1.5 rpm >1500 rpm: max. error ±20% of rated torque 150-1500 rpm: max. error ±20% of rated torque Max. error ±5% of rated torque
(VLT 5072 - 5500 380 - 500 V, VLT 5032 - 5052 200 Connectors are for use of both copper and aluminium Accuracy of display readout (parameters 009-012): Motor current [6] 0-140% load Torque % [7], -100 - 140% load Output [8], power HP [9], 0-90% load Control characteristics: Frequency range Resolution on output frequency System response time Speed, control range (open loop) Speed, accuracy (open loop) Speed, accuracy (closed loop) Torque control accuracy (open loop)	0 - 240 V, VLT 5042 - 5352 525 - 690 V). n cables, unless other is specified. Max. error: ±2.0% of rated output current Max. error: ±5% of rated motor size Max. error: ±5% of rated output 0 - 1000 Hz ±0.003 Hz 3 msec. 1:100 of synchro. speed 1:1000 of synchro. speed 1:1000 of synchro. speed < 1500 rpm: max. error ± 7.5 rpm >1500 rpm: max. error of 0.5% of actual speed < 1500 rpm: max. error ± 1.5 rpm >1500 rpm: max. error of 0.1% of actual speed 0 - 150 rpm: max. error ±20% of rated torque 150-1500 rpm: max. error ±20% of rated torque Max. error ±5% of rated torque
(VLT 5072 - 5500 380 - 500 V, VLT 5032 - 5052 200 Connectors are for use of both copper and aluminium Accuracy of display readout (parameters 009-012): Motor current [6] 0-140% load Torque % [7], -100 - 140% load Output [8], power HP [9], 0-90% load Control characteristics: Frequency range Resolution on output frequency System response time Speed, control range (open loop) Speed, accuracy (open loop) Speed, accuracy (closed loop) Torque control accuracy (open loop) Torque control accuracy (speed feedback)	0 - 240 V, VLT 5042 - 5352 525 - 690 V). n cables, unless other is specified. Max. error: ±2.0% of rated output current Max. error: ±5% of rated motor size Max. error: ±5% of rated output 0 - 1000 Hz ±0.003 Hz 3 msec. 1:100 of synchro. speed 1:1000 of synchro. speed 1:1000 of synchro. speed < 1500 rpm: max. error ± 7.5 rpm >1500 rpm: max. error of 0.5% of actual speed < 1500 rpm: max. error ± 1.5 rpm >1500 rpm: max. error of 0.1% of actual speed 0 - 150 rpm: max. error ±20% of rated torque 150-1500 rpm: max. error ±20% of rated torque Max. error ±5% of rated torque



Vibration test
Max. relative humidity
Max. relative humidity
Aggressive environment (IEC 721 - 3 - 3)
Aggressive environment (IEC 721 - 3 - 3)
Ambient temperature IP 20/Nema 1 (high overload torque 160%) Max. 45°C (24-hour average max. 40°C
Ambient temperature IP 20/Nema 1 (normal overload torque 110%) Max. 40°C (24-hour average max. 35°C
Ambient temperature IP 54 (high overload torque 160%)
Ambient temperature IP 54 (normal overload torque 110%) Max. 40°C (24-hour average max. 35°C)
Ambient temperature IP 20/54 VLT 5011 500 V
Ambient temperature IP 54 VLT 5042-5352, 525-690 V; and 5122-5302, 380-500 V (high overload torque
160%)
Derating for high ambient temperature, see the Design Guide
Min. ambient temperature in full operation
Min. ambient temperature at reduced performance 10°C
Temperature during storage/transport
Max. altitude above sea level
Derating for altitude over 1000 m above sealevel, see the Design Guide
EMC standards applied, Emission EN 61000-6-3, EN 61000-6-4, EN 61800-3, EN 55011
EMC standards applied, Immunity EN 61000-6-2, EN 61000-4-2, EN 61000-4-3, EN 61000-4-2
EN 61000-4-5, EN 61000-4-6, VDE 0160/1990.12
See section on special conditions in the Design Guide
VLT 5001-5062, 525 - 600 V do not comply with EMC or Low Voltage Directives.



VLT 5000 Series protection:

- Electronic motor thermal protection against overload.
- Temperature monitoring of heat-sink ensures that the frequency converter cuts out if the temperature reaches 90°C for IP 00, IP 20 and Nema 1. For IP 54, the cut-out temperature is 80°C. An overtemperature can only be reset when the temperature of the heat-sink has fallen below 60°C.

For the units mentioned below, the limits are as follows:

- VLT 5122, 380-500 V, cuts out at 75°C and can be reset if the temperature has fallen below 60°C.
- VLT 5152, 380-500 V, cuts out at 80°C and can be reset if the temperature has fallen below 60°C.
- VLT 5202, 380-500 V, cuts out at 95°C and can be reset if the temperature has fallen below 65°C.
- VLT 5252, 380-500 V, cuts out at 95°C and can be reset if the temperature has fallen below 65°C.
- VLT 5302, 380-500 V, cuts out at 105°C and can be reset if the temperature has fallen below 75°C.
- VLT 5042-5122, 525-690 V, cut out at 75°C and can be reset if the temperature has fallen below 60°C.
- VLT 5152, 525-690 V, cuts out at 80°C and can be reset if the temperature has fallen below 60°C.
- VLT 5202-5352, 525-690 V, cut out at 100°C and can be reset if the temperature has fallen below 70°C.
- The frequency converter is protected against short-circuiting on motor terminals U, V, W.
- The frequency converter is protected against earth fault on motor terminals U, V, W.
- Monitoring of the intermediate circuit voltage ensures that the frequency converter cuts out if the intermediate circuit voltage becomes too high or too low.
- If a motor phase is missing, the frequency converter cuts out, see parameter 234 Motor phase monitor.
- If there is a mains fault, the frequency converter is able to carry out a controlled decelleration.
- If a mains phase is missing, the frequency converter will cut out when a load is placed on the motor.

■ Electrical data

■ Bookstyle and Compact, Mains supply

3 x 200 - 240 V

according to internati	tional requirements	VLT type	5001	5002	5003	5004	5005	5006
88	Output current	I _{VLT,N} [A]	3.7	5.4	7.8	10.6	12.5	15.2
	h	_{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A]	5.9	8.6	12.5	17	20	24.3
	Output (240 V)	S _{VLT,N} [kVA]	1.5	2.2	3.2	4.4	5.2	6.3
0000	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT,N} [kW]	0.75	1.1	1.5	2.2	3.0	3.7
	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT,N} [HP]	1	1.5	2	3	4	5
	Max. cable cross-section to motor, brake and loadsharing [mm ²]/[AWG] ²)	4/10	4/10	4/10	4/10	4/10	4/10
	Rated input current	(200 V)I _{L,N} [A]	3.4	4.8	7.1	9.5	11.5	14.5
	Max. cable cross-section power [mm²]/[AWG]²)		4/10	4/10	4/10	4/10	4/10	4/10
	Max. pre-fuses	[-]/UL ¹⁾ [A]	16/10	16/10	16/15	25/20	25/25	35/3
	Efficiency ³⁾		0.95	0.95	0.95	0.95	0.95	0.95
	Weight IP 20 EB Bookstyle	[kg]	7	7	7	9	9	9.5
	Weight IP 20 EB Compact	[kg]	8	8	8	10	10	10
	Weight IP 54 Compact	[kg]	11.5	11.5	11.5	13.5	13.5	13.5
Ŋ	Power loss at max. load.	[W]	58	76	95	126	172	194
	Enclosure		IP 20/	IP 20				

- 1. For type of fuse see section Fuses.
- 2. American Wire Gauge.
- 3. Measured using 30 m screened motor cables at rated load and rated frequency.



■ Compact, Mains supply 3 x 200 - 240 V

ccording to internationa	l requirements	VLT type		5008	5011	5016	5022	5027
	Normal overload torque (110) %):						
	Output current	I _{VLT,N} [A]		32	46	61.2	73	88
		I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A]		35.2	50.6	67.3	80.3	96.8
	Output (240 V)	S _{VLT,N} [kVA]		13.3	19.1	25.4	30.3	36.6
	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT,N} [kW]		7.5	11	15	18.5	22
Λ Al	Typical shaft output P _{VLT,N} [HP]		10	15	20	25	30	
	High overload torque (160 %	6):						
888 4⊕⊅ 0000	Output current	I _{VLT,N} [A]		25	32	46	61.2	73
0000		I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A]		40	51.2	73.6	97.9	116.8
	Output (240 V)	S _{VLT,N} [kVA]		10	13	19	25	30
	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT,N} [kW]		5.5	7.5	11	15	18.5
	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT,N} [HP]		7.5	10	15	20	25
	Max. cable cross-section to	motor,	IP 54	16/6	16/6	35/2	35/2	50/0
	brake and loadsharing [mm ² ,	/AWG] ²⁾⁵⁾	IP 20	16/6	35/2	35/2	35/2	50/0
	Min. cable cross-section to r loadsharing ⁴⁾ [mm ² /AWG] ²⁾	motor, brake and		10/8	10/8	10/8	10/8	16/6
	Rated input current	(200 V) I _{L,N} [A]		32	46	61	73	88
	Max. cable cross-section,	(200 1) 12,14 [7 1]	IP 54	16/6	16/6	35/2	35/2	50/0
	power [mm ²]/[AWG] ²⁾⁵⁾		IP 20	16/6	35/2	35/2	35/2	50/0
0	Max. pre-fuses	[-]/UL ¹⁾ [A]		50	60	80	125	125
	Efficiency ³⁾	., .,		0.95	0.95	0.95	0.95	0.95
	Weight IP 20 EB	[kg]		21	25	27	34	36
	Weight IP 54	[kg]		38	40	53	55	56
3000	Power loss at max. load.							
	- high overload torque (160 %)	[W]		340	426	626	833	994
h .	- normal overload torque (110 %)	[W]		426	545	783	1042	1243
	Enclosure			IP 20/	IP 20/	IP 20/	IP 20/	IP 20
				IP 54	IP 54	IP 54	IP 54	IP 54

- 1. For type of fuse see section Fuses
- 2. American Wire Gauge.
- 3. Measured using 30 m screened motor cables at rated load and rated frequency.
- 4. Min. cable cross-section is the smallest cable cross-section allowed to be fitted on the terminals to comply with IP 20. Always comply with national and local regulations on min. cable cross-section.
- 5. Aluminium cables with cross-section above 35 mm² must be connected by use of a Al-Cu connector.



■ Compact, Mains supply 3 x 200 - 240 V

according to international re-	quirements	VLT type	5032	5042	5052
	Normal overload torque (110 %):				
	Output current	I _{VLT,N} [A] (200-230 V)	115	143	170
		I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (200-230 V)	127	158	187
		I _{VLT,N} [A] (231-240 V)	104	130	154
		I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (231-240 V)	115	143	170
	Output	S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (208 V)	41	52	61
		S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (230 V)	46	57	68
		S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (240 V)	43	54	64
	Typical shaft output	[HP] (208 V)	40	50	60
	Typical shaft output	[kW] (230 V)	30	37	45
	High overload torque (160 %):				
	Output current	I _{VLT,N} [A] (200-230 V)	88	115	143
0000	<u> </u>	I _{VLT, MAX} [A] (200-230 V)	132	173	215
	-	I _{VLT,N} [A] (231-240 V)	80	104	130
	<u> </u>	I _{VLT, MAX} [A] (231-240 V)	120	285	195
	Output	S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (208 V)	32	41	52
ln	· —	S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (230 V)	35	46	57
		S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (240 V)	33	43	54
	Typical shaft output	[HP] (208 V)	30	40	50
		[kW] (230 V)	22	30	37
	Max. cable cross-section to motor and	[mm ²] ^{4,6}		120	
	loadsharing	[AWG] ^{2,4,6}		300 mcm	
	- Journal III. g	[mm ²] ^{4,6}		25	
	Max. cable cross-section to brake	[AWG] ^{2,4,6}		4	
	Normal overload torque (110 %):	į Waj			
	Rated input current	I _{L,N} [A] (230 V)	101.3	126.6	149.9
	Normal overload torque (150 %):	2,10 [] ()			
	Rated input current	I _{L,N} [A] (230 V)	77,9	101,3	126,6
	Max. cable cross-section	[mm ²] ^{4,6}		120	
8	power supply	[AWG] ^{2,4,6}		300 mcm	
	Min. cable cross-section to motor, power	[mm ²] ^{4,6}		6	
	supply, brake and loadsharing	[AWG] ^{2,4,6}		8	
0000	Max. pre-fuses (mains) [-]/UL	[A] ¹	150/150	200/200	250/25
	Efficiency ³	ניש	100/100	0,96-0,97	200,20
	Power loss	Normal overload [W]	1089	1361	1612
		High overload [W]	838	1089	1361
-		riigir ovondau [vv]	300		
h	Weight		101	101	7(17
h	Weight	IP 00 [kg]	101	101	101
nn	Weight Weight Weight	IP 00 [kg] IP 20 Nema1 [kg] IP 54 Nema12 [kg]	101 101 104	101 101 104	101

- 1. For type of fuse see section Fuses
- 2. American Wire Gauge.
- 3. Measured using 30 m screened motor cables at rated load and rated frequency.
- 4. Max. cable cross-section is the maximum possible cable cross-section allowed to be fitted on the terminals. Min. cable cross-section is the minimum allowed cross-section. Always comply with national and local regulations on min. cable cross-section.
- 5. Weight without shipping container.
- 6. Connection stud: M8 Brake: M6.



IP 54

IP 54

IP 54

IP 54

■ Bookstyle and Compact, Mains supply

3 x 380 - 500 V

ccording to internation	nal requirements	VLT type	5001	5002	5003	5004
	Output current	I _{VLT,N} [A] (380-440 V)	2.2	2.8	4.1	5.6
0		I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (380-440 V)	3.5	4.5	6.5	9
		I _{VLT,N} [A] (441-500 V)	1.9	2.6	3.4	4.8
		l _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (441-500 V)	3	4.2	5.5	7.7
1 <u>00</u>	Output	S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (380-440 V)	1.7	2.1	3.1	4.3
0000		S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (441-500 V)	1.6	2.3	2.9	4.2
	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT,N} [kW]	0.75	1.1	1.5	2.2
	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT,N} [HP]	1	1.5	2	3
a a	Max. cable cross-section to motor, brake and loadsharing [mm²]/[AWG]²)		4/10	4/10	4/10	4/10
	Rated input current	I _{L.N} [A] (380 V)	2.3	2.6	3.8	5.3
		I _{L,N} [A] (460 V)	1.9	2.5	3.4	4.8
	Max. cable cross-section, power [mm ²		4/10	4/10	4/10	4/10
	Max. pre-fuses [-]/UL ¹⁾ [A]		16/6	16/6	16/10	16/1
	Efficiency 3)		0.96	0.96	0.96	0.96
0000	Weight IP 20 EB Bookstyle [kg]		7	7	7	7.5
	Weight IP 20 EB Compact [kg]		8	8	8	8.5
	Weight IP 54 Compact [kg]		11.5	11.5	11.5	12
	Power loss at max. load	[W]	55	67	92	110
			IP 20/	IP 20/	IP 20/	IP 20
	Enclosure		ID 54	ID 54	ID 54	ID 54

- 1. For type of fuse see section Fuses.
- 2. American Wire Gauge.
- 3. Measured using 30 m screened motor cables at rated load and rated frequency.



Bookstyle and Compact, Mains supply 3 x 380 - 500 V

ccording to internation	nal requirements	VLT type	5005	5006	5008	5011
	Output current	I _{VLT,N} [A] (380-440 V)	7.2	10	13	16
0		I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (380-440 V)	11.5	16	20.8	25.6
أهأ		I _{VLT,N} [A] (441-500 V)	6.3	8.2	11	14.5
	_	I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (441-500 V)	10.1	13.1	17.6	23.2
868 4€Þ	Output	S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (380-440 V)	5.5	7.6	9.9	12.2
0000		S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (441-500 V)	5.5	7.1	9.5	12.6
	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT,N} [kW]	3.0	4.0	5.5	7.5
	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT,N} [HP]	4	5	7.5	10
	Max. cable cross-section to brake and loadsharing [mm²	,	4/10	4/10	4/10	4/10
	Rated input current	I _{L,N} [A] (380 V)	7	9.1	12.2	15.0
(n - n)		I _{L,N} [A] (460 V)	6	8.3	10.6	14.0
ن ظ ا	Max. cable cross-section po	wer [mm²]/[AWG]²)	4/10	4/10	4/10	4/10
	Max. pre-fuses [-]/UL1) [A]		16/15	25/20	25/25	35/3
□□□ <	Efficiency 3)		0.96	0.96	0.96	0.96
0000	Weight IP 20 EB Bookstyle [kg]	7.5	9.5	9.5	9.5
	Weight IP 20 EB Compact [g]	8.5	10.5	10.5	10.5
	Weight IP 54 EB Compact [g]	12	14	14	14
	Power loss at max. load.	[W]	139	198	250	295
	Enclosure		IP 20/	IP 20/	IP 20/	IP 20

- 1. For type of fuse see section Fuses.
- 2. American Wire Gauge.
- 3. Measured using 30 m screened motor cables at rated load and rated frequency.



■ Compact, Mains supply 3 x 380 - 500 V

ccording to international r	requirements	VLT type		5016	5022	5027
	Normal overload torque (110 %):					
	Output current	I _{VLT,N} [A] (380-440 V)		32	37.5	44
		I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (380-440 V)		35.2	41.3	48.4
		I _{VLT,N} [A] (441-500 V)		27.9	34	41.4
		I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (441-500 V)		30.7	37.4	45.5
	Output	S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (380-440 V)		24.4	28.6	33.5
		S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (441-500 V)		24.2	29.4	35.8
n a	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT,N} [kW]		15	18.5	22
	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT,N} [HP]		20	25	30
	High overload torque (160 %):					
<u>4⊕0</u>	Output current	I _{VLT,N} [A] (380-440 V)		24	32	37.5
0000		I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (380-440 V)		38.4	51.2	60
		I _{VLT,N} [A] (441-500 V)		21.7	27.9	34
	•	I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (441-500 V)		34.7	44.6	54.4
	Output	S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (380-440 V)		18.3	24.4	28.6
		S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (441-500 V)		18.8	24.2	29.4
	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT,N} [kW]		11	15	18.5
	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT,N} [HP]		15	20	25
	Max. cable cross-section to motor,		IP 54	16/6	16/6	16/6
	brake and loadsharing [mm ²]/[AWG] ²⁾		IP 20	16/6	16/6	35/2
	Min. cable cross-section to motor,					
	brake and loadsharing [mm2]/[AWG] ^{2) 4)}			10/8	10/8	10/8
	Rated input current	I _{L,N} [A] (380 V)		32	37.5	44
		I _{L,N} [A] (460 V)		27.6	34	41
	Max. cable cross-section,		IP 54	16/6	16/6	16/6
8	power [mm ²]/[AWG]		IP 20	16/6	16/6	35/2
	Max. pre-fuses	[-]/UL ¹⁾ [A]		63/40	63/50	63/60
	Efficiency ³⁾			0.96	0.96	0.96
0000	Weight IP 20 EB	[kg]		21	22	27
	Weight IP 54	[kg]		41	41	42
	Power loss at max. load.					
	- high overload torque (160 %)	[W]		419	559	655
·	- normal overload torque (110 %)	[W]		559	655	768
				IP 20/	IP 20/	IP 20
	Enclosure			IP 54	IP 54	IP 54

- 1. For type of fuse see section Fuses.
- 2. American Wire Gauge.
- 3. Measured using 30 m screened motor cables at rated load and rated frequency.
- 4. Min. cable cross-section is the smallest cable cross-section allowed to be fitted on the terminals to comply with IP 20. Always comply with national and local regulations on min. cable cross-section.



Compact, Mains supply 3 x 380 - 500 V

cording to international re	equirements	VLT type		5032	5042	5052
	Normal overload torque (110 %):					
	Output current	I _{VLT.N} [A] (380-440 V)		61	73	90
		I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (380-440 V)		67.1	80.3	99
		I _{VLT,N} [A] (441-500 V)		54	65	78
		I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (441-500 V)		59.4	71.5	85.8
	Output	S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (380-440 V)		46.5	55.6	68.6
		S _{VLT.N} [kVA] (441-500 V)		46.8	56.3	67.5
	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT,N} [kW]		30	37	45
	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT,N} [HP]		40	50	60
### Figure Figure	High overload torque (160 %):					
<u> </u>	Output current	I _{VLT.N} [A] (380-440 V)		44	61	73
0000		I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (380-440 V)		70.4	97.6	116.8
	<u>_</u>	I _{VLT,N} [A] (441-500 V)		41.4	54	65
	d	I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (441-500 V)		66.2	86	104
	Output	S _{VLT.N} [kVA] (380-440 V)		33.5	46.5	55.6
		S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (441-500 V)		35.9	46.8	56.3
	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT.N} [kW]		22	30	37
	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT,N} [HP]		30	40	50
	Max. cable cross-section to motor,		IP 54	35/2	35/2	50/0
	brake and loadsharing [mm ²]/[AWG	<u>a</u>] ²⁾⁵⁾	IP20	35/2	35/2	50/0
	Min. cable cross-section to motor,					
	brake and loadsharing [mm ²]/[AWG	g] ²⁾⁴⁾		10/8	10/8	16/6
	Rated input current	I _{L,N} [A] (380 V)		60	72	89
		I _{L.N} [A] (460 V)		53	64	77
8	Max. cable cross-section		IP 54	35/2	35/2	50/0
	power[mm ²]/[AWG] ^{2) 5)}		IP 20	35/2	35/2	50/0
	Max. pre-fuses	[-]/UL ¹⁾ [A]		80/80	100/100	125/12
4\$b	Efficiency ³⁾			0.96	0.96	0.96
0000	Weight IP 20 EB	[kg]		28	41	42
	Weight IP 54	[kg]		54	56	56
	Power loss at max. load.					
, l	- high overload torque (160 %)	[W]		768	1065	1275
	- normal overload torque (110 %)	[W]		1065	1275	1571
				IP 20/	IP 20/	IP 20/
	Enclosure					

- 1. For type of fuse see section Fuses.
- 2. American Wire Gauge.
- 3. Measured using 30 m screened motor cables at rated load and rated frequency.
- 4. Min. cable cross-section is the smallest cable cross-section allowed to be fitted on the terminals to comply with IP 20. Always comply with national and local regulations on min. cable cross-section.
- 5. Aluminium cables with cross-section above 35 mm² must be connected by use of a Al-Cu connector.



Compact, Mains supply 3 x 380 - 500 V

According to international requir	rements	VLT type		5062	5072	5102
	Normal overload torque (110 %):					
	Output current	I _{VLT.N} [A] (380-440 V)		106	147	177
		I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (380-440 V)		117	162	195
		I _{VLT,N} [A] (441-500 V)		106	130	160
		I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (441-500 V)		117	143	176
	Output	S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (380-440 V)		80.8	102	123
	•	S _{VLT.N} [kVA] (441-500 V)		91.8	113	139
	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT,N} [kW] (400 V)		55	75	90
(A)		P _{VLT.N} [HP] (460 V)		75	100	125
		P _{VLT,N} [kW] (500 V)		75	90	110
	High overload torque (160 %):	721117				
956	Output current	l _{VLT.N} [A] (380-440 V)		90	106	147
0000	·	l _{VLT. MAX} (60 s) [A] (380-440 V)		135	159	221
		l _{VLT,N} [A] (441-500 V)		80	106	130
		l _{VLT. MAX} (60 s) [A] (441-500 V)		120	159	195
	Output	S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (380-440 V)		68.6	73.0	102
in		S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (441-500 V)		69.3	92.0	113
	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT,N} [kW] (400 V)		45	55	75
	.,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	P _{VLT,N} [HP] (460 V)		60	75	100
		P _{VLT,N} [kW] (500 V)		55	75	90
		151111		(-5)	150/300	150/300
	Max. cable cross-section to motor,		IP 54	50/0 ⁵⁾	mcm ⁶⁾	mcm ⁶⁾
					120/250	120/250
	brake and loadsharing [mm ²]/[AWG] ²⁾		IP20	50/0 ⁵⁾	mcm ⁵⁾	mcm ⁵⁾
	Min. cable cross-section to motor,					
	brake and loadsharing [mm²]/[AWG]4)			16/6	25/4	25/4
	Rated input current	I _{LN} [A] (380 V)		104	145	174
		I _{L,N} [A] (460 V)		104	128	158
	Max. cable cross-section		IP 54	50/0 ⁵⁾	150/300	150/300
	power[mm ²]/[AWG] ²⁾		IP 20	50/05)	mcm 120/250	mcm 120/250
			20	00/0	mcm ⁵⁾	mcm ⁵⁾
4	Max. pre-fuses	[-]/UL ¹⁾ [A]		160/150	225/225	250/250
	Efficiency ³⁾			>0.97	>0.97	>0.97
	Weight IP 20 EB	[kg]		43	54	54
	Weight IP 54	[kg]		60	77	77
	Power loss at max. load.					
la	- high overload torque (160 %)	[W]		1122	1058	1467
	- normal overload torque (110 %)	[W]		1322	1467	1766
				IP20/	IP20/	IP20/
	Enclosure			IP 54	IP 54	IP 54
				11 0 1	0 1	.1 0 1

- 1. For type of fuse see section Fuses.
- 2. American Wire Gauge.
- 3. Measured using 30 m screened motor cables at rated load and rated frequency.
- 4. Min. cable cross-section is the smallest cable cross-section allowed to be fitted on the terminals to comply with IP 20. Always comply with national and local regulations on min. cable cross-section.
- 5. Aluminium cables with cross-section above 35 mm² must be connected by use of a Al-Cu connector. used.
- 6. Brake and loadsharing: $95 \text{ mm}^2 / \text{AWG } 3/0$



■ Compact, Mains supply 3 x 380-500 V

cording to international require	ements	VLT type	5122	5152	5202	5252	5302
	Normal overload current (11	10 %):					
	Output current	I _{VLT,N} [A] (380-440 V)	212	260	315	395	480
	•	l _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (380-440 V)	233	286	347	434	528
		I _{VLT,N} [A] (441-500 V)	190	240	302	361	443
		l _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (441-500 V)	209	264	332	397	487
	Output	S _{VLT.N} [kVA] (400 V)	147	180	218	274	333
		S _{VLT.N} [kVA] (460 V)	151	191	241	288	353
		S _{VITN} [kVA] (500 V)	165	208	262	313	384
	Typical shaft output	[kW] (400 V)	110	132	160	200	250
	Typical Chair Carput	[HP] (460 V)	150	200	250	300	350
		[kW] (500 V)	132	160	200	250	315
	High overload torque (160 %		102	100	200	200	010
	Output current	l _{VLT.N} [A] (380-440 V)	177	212	260	315	395
<u> </u>	Output current	l _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (380-440 V)	266	318	390	473	593
		l _{VLT,N} [A] (441-500 V)	160	190	240	302	361 542
	Output	l _{VLT. MAX} (60 s) [A] (441-500 V)	240	285	360	453	
	Output	S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (400 V)	123	147	180	218	274
 -		S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (460 V)	127	151	191	241	288
		S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (500 V)	139	165	208	262	313
	Typical shaft output	[kW] (400 V)	90	110	132	160	200
		[HP] (460 V)	125	150	200	250	300
		[kW] (500 V)	110	132	160	200	250
	Max. cable cross-section to	[mm ²] ^{4,6}	2	x 70		2 x 18	5
	motor	[AWG] ^{2,4,6}	2 :	x 2/0		2 x 350 n	ncm
	Max. cable cross-section to	[mm ²] ^{4,6}	2	x 70		2 x 18	5
	loadsharing and brake	[AWG] ^{2,4,6}	2 :	x 2/0		2 x 350 n	ncm
	Normal overload current (11						
	Rated input current	I _{L.N} [A] (380-440 V)	208	256	317	385	467
	riated in par earrone	I _{L,N} [A] (441-500 V)	185	236	304	356	431
	High overload torque (160 %			200			
	Rated input current	I _{L,N} [A] (380-440 V)	174	206	256	318	389
	natod input ourrorit	I _{L,N} [A] (441-500 V)	158	185	236	304	356
	Max. cable cross-section	ILN JAJ (441-300 V) [mm ²] ^{4,6}		x 70		2 x 18	
8							
	power supply	[AWG] ^{2,4,6}		x 2/0		2 x 350 n	ncm
	Min. cable cross-section to	[mm ²] ^{4,6}		35		35	
	motor and power supply	[AWG] ^{2,4,6}		2		2	
0000	Min. cable cross-section to	[mm ²] ^{4,6}		10		10	
	brake and loadsharing	[AWG] ^{2,4,6}		8		8	
		p o.j	300/	350/	450/	500/	630/
	Max. pre-fuses (mains) [-]/UL	[A] ¹					
			300	350	400	500	600
	Efficiency ³		2010		0,98	1077	0.1
	Power loss	Normal overload [W]	2619	3309	4163	4977	6107
		High overload [W]	2206	2619	3309	4163	4977
		ID 00 [1:-1	82	91	112	123	138
	Weight	IP 00 [kg]					
	Weight Weight Weight	IP 00 [kg] IP 21/Nema1 [kg] IP 54/Nema12 [kg]	96 96	104	125 125	136 136	151 151

- 1. For type of fuse see section Fuses
- 2. American Wire Gauge.
- 3. Measured using 30 m screened motor cables at rated load and rated frequency.
- 4. Max. cable cross-section is the maximum possible cable cross-section allowed to be fitted on the terminals. Min. cable cross-section is the minimum allowed cross-section. Always comply with national and local regulations on min. cable cross-section.
- 5. Weight without shipping container.
- 6. Connection bolt power supply and motor: M10; Brake and loadsharing: M8



■ Compact, Mains supply 3 x 380-500 V

ments	VLT type	5350	5450	5500
Normal overload current (110	%):			
Output current	I _{VLT.N} [A] (380-440 V)	600	658	745
		660		820
				678
				746
Output				516
				540
				587
Typical shaft output				400
				600
		355	400	500
Output current			600	658
				987
	l _{VLT.N} [A] (441-500 V)	443	540	590
				885
Output				456
				470
				511
Typical shaft output				355
				500
		315		400
Max. cable cross-section to	[mm²] ^{4,0}		2x400 - 3x18	50
motor and loadsharing	[AWG] ^{2,4,6}	2	2x750 mcm - 3x35	50 mcm
Max. cable cross-section	[mm ²] ^{4,6}		70	
to brake	[AWG] ^{2,4,6}		2/0	
Normal overload current (110	%):			
Rated input current	I _{L,N} [A] (380-440 V)	584	648	734
	I _{L.N} [A] (441-500 V)	526	581	668
High overload torque (160 %):				
Rated input current	I _{L.N} [A] (380-440 V)	467	584	648
	I _{L,N} [A] (441-500 V)	431	526	581
Max. cable cross-section	[mm ²] ^{4,6}		2x400 - 3x1	50
power supply	[AWG] ^{2,4,6}	2	2x750 mcm - 3x35	50 mcm
Min. cable cross-section to	[mm ²] ^{4,6}			
motor power supply and			70	
	[/ WVG] / /		3/0	
	From 214 6			
brake	[AWG] ^{2,4,6}		8	
Max. pre-fuses (mains) [-]/UL	[A] ¹	700/700	800/800	800/800
Power loss	Normal overload [W]	11300	12500	14400
	High overload [W]	9280	11300	12500
				E0E
Weight	IP 00 [kg]	515	560	585
Weight Weight Weight	IP 00 [kg] IP 21/Nema1 [kg] IP 54/Nema12 [kg]	515 630 640	560 675 685	700 710
	Output Typical shaft output High overload torque (160 %): Output current Output Typical shaft output Max. cable cross-section to motor and loadsharing Max. cable cross-section to brake Normal overload current (110 Rated input current High overload torque (160 %): Rated input current Max. cable cross-section power supply Min. cable cross-section to motor, power supply and loadsharing Min. cable cross-section to brake	Normal overload current (110 %):	Normal overload current (110 %):	Normal overload current (110 %): Cutput current

- 1. For type of fuse see section Fuses
- 2. American Wire Gauge.
- 3. Measured using 30 m screened motor cables at rated load and rated frequency.
- 4. Max. cable cross-section is the maximum possible cable cross-section allowed to be fitted on the terminals. Min. cable cross-section is the minimum allowed cross-section. Always comply with national and local regulations on min. cable cross-section.
- 5. Weight without shipping container.
- 6. Connection bolt power supply, motor and loadsharing: M12; Brake: M8 $\,$



■ Compact, Mains supply 3 x 525 - 600 V

cording to internation	al requirements	VLT type	5001	5002	5003	5004
	Normal overload torque (110 %):					
	Output current	I _{VLT.N} [A] (550 V)	2.6	2.9	4.1	5.2
		I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (550 V)	2.9	3.2	4.5	5.7
		I _{VLT.N} [A] (575 V)	2.4	2.7	3.9	4.9
		I _{VLT. MAX} (60 s) [A] (575 V)	2.6	3.0	4.3	5.4
	Output	S _{VLT.N} [kVA] (550 V)	2.5	2.8	3.9	5.0
		S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (575 V)	2.4	2.7	3.9	4.9
- 8	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT.N} [kW]	1.1	1.5	2.2	3
	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT,N} [HP]	1.5	2	3	4
	Highl overload torque (160%):					
<u>></u>	Output current	I _{VLT.N} [A] (550 V)	1.8	2.6	2.9	4.1
30		I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (550 V)	2.9	4.2	4.6	6.6
	_	I _{VLT.N} [A] (575 V)	1.7	2.4	2.7	3.9
		I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (575 V)	2.7	3.8	4.3	6.2
	Output	S _{VLT.N} [kVA] (550 V)	1.7	2.5	2.8	3.9
n		S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (575 V)	1.7	2.4	2.7	3.9
	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT.N} [kW]	0.75	1.1	1.5	2.2
	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT,N} [HP]	1	1.5	2	3
	Max. cable cross-section to motor,					
	brake and loadsharing [mm ²]/[AWGl ²)		4/10	4/10	4/10	4/10
	brane and loadsharing [mm]/[/w/d]/					
	Normal overload torque (110 %):					
	Rated input current	I _{L.N} [A] (550 V)	2.5	2.8	4.0	5.1
0		I _{L,N} [A] (600 V)	2.2	2.5	3.6	4.6
	High overload torque (160 %):					
	Rated input current	I _{L,N} [A] (550 V)	1.8	2.5	2.8	4.0
		I _{L.N} [A] (600 V)	1.6	2.2	2.5	3.6
	Max. cable cross-section, power [mm ²	²]/[AWG] ²⁾	4/10	4/10	4/10	4/10
	Max. pre-fuses	[-]/UL ¹⁾ [A]	3	4	5	6
	Efficiency 3)		0.96	0.96	0.96	0.96
	Weight IP 20 EB	[kg]	10.5	10.5	10.5	10.5
	Power loss at max. load.	[W]	63	71	102	129
u	Enclosure	1.21			0 / Nema 1	*

- 1. For type of fuses see section Fuses.
- 2. American Wire Gauge.
- 3. Measured using 30 m screened motor cables at rated load and rated frequency.



Compact, Mains supply 3 x 525 - 600 V

cording to internation	al requirements	VLT type	5005	5006	5008	5011
	Normal overload torque (110 %):					
	Output current	I _{VLT,N} [A] (550 V)	6.4	9.5	11.5	11.5
		I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (550 V)	7.0	10.5	12.7	12.7
		I _{VLT,N} [A] (575 V)	6.1	9.0	11.0	11.0
		I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (575 V)	6.7	9.9	12.1	12.1
	Output	S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (550 V)	6.1	9.0	11.0	11.0
		S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (575 V)	6.1	9.0	11.0	11.0
6)	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT,N} [kW]	4	5.5	7.5	7.5
i	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT,N} [HP]	5	7.5	10.0	10.0
	Highl overload torque (160%):					
<u> </u>	Output current	I _{VLT,N} [A] (550 V)	5.2	6.4	9.5	11.5
10		I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (550 V)	8.3	10.2	15.2	18.4
		I _{VLT,N} [A] (575 V)	4.9	6.1	9.0	11.0
		I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (575 V)	7.8	9.8	14.4	17.6
, and	Output	S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (550 V)	5.0	6.1	9.0	11.0
	·	S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (575 V)	4.9	6.1	9.0	11.0
	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT,N} [kW]	3	4	5.5	7.5
	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT,N} [HP]	4	5	7.5	10
	Max. cable cross-section to motor,					
	brake and loadsharing [mm²]/[AWG	G] ²⁾	4/10	4/10	4/10	4/10
	Normal overload torque (110 %):					
	Rated input current	I _{L,N} [A] (550 V)	6.2	9.2	11.2	11.2
		I _{L,N} [A] (600 V)	5.7	8.4	10.3	10.3
8	High overload torque (160 %):					
	Rated input current	I _{L,N} [A] (550 V)	5.1	6.2	9.2	11.2
		I _{L,N} [A] (600 V)	4.6	5.7	8.4	10.3
0000 0000	Max. cable cross-section, power [m	nm²]/[AWG]²)	4/10	4/10	4/10	4/10
	Max. pre-fuses	[-]/UL ¹⁾ [A]	8	10	15	20
	Efficiency 3)		0.96	0.96	0.96	0.96
	Weight IP 20 EB	[kg]	10.5	10.5	10.5	10.5
h	Power loss at max. load.	[W]	160	236	288	288
	Enclosure		IP 20 / I	Nema 1		

- 1. For type of fuses see section Fuses.
- 2. American Wire Gauge.
- 3. Measured using 30 m screened motor cables at rated load and rated frequency.



■ Compact, Mains supply 3 x 525 - 600 V

cording to international requir	rements	VLT type	5016	5022	5027
	Normal overload torque (110 %):				
	Output current	I _{VLT,N} [A] (550 V)	23	28	34
		I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (550 V)	25	31	37
		I _{VLT,N} [A] (575 V)	22	27	32
		l _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (575 V)	24	30	35
	Output	S _{VLT.N} [kVA] (550 V)	22	27	32
		S _{VLT.N} [kVA] (575 V)	22	27	32
	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT,N} [kW]	15	18.5	22
	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT.N} [HP]	20	25	30
	High overload torque (160 %):				
<u>4\(\alpha\)</u>	Output current	I _{VLT,N} [A] (550 V)	18	23	28
<u>uuuu</u>		I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (550 V)	29	37	45
		I _{VLT,N} [A] (575 V)	17	22	27
		I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (575 V)	27	35	43
	Output	S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (550 V)	17	22	27
N		S _{VLT.N} [kVA] (575 V)	17	22	27
	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT,N} [kW]	11	15	18.5
	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT,N} [HP]	15	20	25
	Max. cable cross-section to motor,		16	16	35
	brake and loadsharing [mm ²]/[AWG] ²⁾		6	6	2
	Min. cable cross-section to motor,		0.5	0.5	10
	brake and loadsharing [mm2]/[AWG] ⁴⁾		20	20	8
	Normal overload torque (110 %):				
	Rated input current	I _{L.N.} [A] (550 V)	22	27	33
0		I _{L,N} [A] (600 V)	21	25	30
	High overload torque (160 %):				
	Rated input current	I _{L.N.} [A] (550 V)	18	22	27
		I _{L.N} [A] (600 V)	16	21	25
	Max. cable cross-section,		16	16	35
3330	power [mm ²]/[AWG] ²)		6	6	2
	Max. pre-fuses	[-]/UL ¹⁾ [A]	30	35	45
	Efficiency ³⁾		0.96	0.96	0.96
	Weight IP 20 EB	[kg]	23	23	30
<u> </u>	Power loss at max. load	[W]	576	707	838
	Enclosure			IP 20 / Nen	na 1

- 1. For type of fuse see section Fuses
- 2. American Wire Gauge.
- 3. Measured using 30 m screened motor cables at rated load and rated frequency.
- 4. Min. cable cross-section is the smallest cable cross-section allowed to be fitted on the terminals to comply with IP 20. Always comply with national and local regulations on min. cable cross-section.



Compact, Mains supply 3 x 525 - 600 V

According to international requirements		VLT type	5032	5042	5052	5062
	Normal overload torque (110 %	6):				
	Output current	I _{VLT.N} [A] (550 V)	43	54	65	81
		l _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (550 V)	47	59	72	89
		l _{VLT,N} [A] (575 V)	41	52	62	77
		l _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (575 V)	45	57	68	85
	Output	S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (550 V)	41	51	62	77
		S _{VLT.N} [kVA] (575 V)	41	52	62	77
	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT,N} [kW]	30	37	45	55
	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT.N} [HP]	40	50	60	75
	High overload torque (160 %):					
<u>∌o</u>	Output current	I _{VLT.N} [A] (550 V)	34	43	54	65
100		I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (550 V)	54	69	86	104
	_	l _{VLT.N} [A] (575 V)	32	41	52	62
		lyLT, MAX (60 s) [A] (575 V)	51	66	83	99
	Output	S _{VLT.N} [kVA] (550 V)	32	41	51	62
	•	S _{VLT.N} [kVA] (575 V)	32	41	52	62
	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT,N} [kW]	22	30	37	45
	Typical shaft output	P _{VLT,N} [HP]	30	40	50	60
	Max. cable cross-section to mo		35	50	50	50
	brake and loadsharing [mm²]/[A		2	1/0	1/0	1/0
	Min. cable cross-section to mot		10	16	16	16
	brake and loadsharing [mm²]/[A	,	8	6	6	6
	Normal overload torque (110	· ·			-	
	Rated input current	I _{L.N} [A] (550 V)	42	53	63	79
		I _{LN} [A] (600 V)	38	49	58	72
8	High overload torque (160 %)					
	Rated input current	I _{L.N.} [A] (550 V)	33	42	53	63
		I _{LN} [A] (600 V)	30	38	49	58
₫₽₽	Max. cable cross-section		35	50	50	50
0000	power[mm ²]/[AWG] ^{2) 5)}		2	1/0	1/0	1/0
	Max. pre-fuses	[-]/UL ¹⁾ [A]	60	75	90	100
	Efficiency ³⁾	1,22 64	0.96	0.96	0.96	0.96
	Weight IP 20 EB	[kg]	30	48	48	48
lvЛ	Power loss at max. load	[W]	1074	1362	1624	2016
	Enclosure	[00]	1017		/ Nema 1	2010

- 1. For type of fuse see section Fuses
- 2. American Wire Gauge.
- 3. Measured using 30 m screened motor cables at rated load and rated frequency.
- 4. Min. cable cross-section is the smallest cable cross-section allowed to be fitted on the terminals to comply with IP 20. Always comply with national and local regulations on min. cable cross-section.
- 5. Aluminium cables with cross-section above 35 mm² must be connected by use of a Al-Cu connector.



■ Mains supply 3 x 525-690 V

According to international requirements		VLT type	5042	5052	5062	5072	5102
	Normal overload current (11	0 %):					
	Output current	I _{VLT,N} [A] (525-550 V)	56	76	90	113	137
		l _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (525-550 V)	62	84	99	124	151
		I _{VLT,N} [A] (551-690 V)	54	73	86	108	131
		l _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (551-690 V)	59	80	95	119	144
	Output	S _{VLT.N} [kVA] (550 V)	53	72	86	108	131
		S _{VLT.N} [kVA] (575 V)	54	73	86	108	130
		S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (690 V)	65	87	103	129	157
	Typical shaft output	[kW] (550 V)	37	45	55	75	90
8		[HP] (575 V)	50	60	75	100	125
		[kW] (690 V)	45	55	75	90	110
	High overload torque (160 %	6):					
<u>4♦</u> >	Output current	I _{VLT,N} [A] (525-550 V)	48	56	76	90	113
0000		l _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A] (525-550 V)	72	84	114	135	170
		I _{VLT,N} [A] (551-690 V)	46	54	73	86	108
	<u> </u>	I _{VLT. MAX} (60 s) [A] (551-690 V)	69	81	110	129	162
	Output	S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (550 V)	46	53	72	86	108
		S _{VLT.N} [kVA] (575 V)	46	54	73	86	108
		S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (690 V)	55	65	87	103	129
	Typical shaft output	[kW] (550 V)	30	37	45	55	75
		[HP] (575 V)	40	50	60	75	100
		[kW] (690 V)	37	45	55	75	90
	Max. cable cross-section to	[mm ²] ^{4,6}			2 x 70)	
	motor	[AWG]2,4,6			2 x 2/)	
	Max. cable cross-section to	[mm ²] ^{4,6}			2 x 70		
	loadsharing and brake	[AWG] ^{2,4,6}			2 x 2/)	
	Normal overload current (11		00	77	00	110	100
	Rated input current	I _{LN} [A] (550 V)	60	77	89	110	130
		I _{L,N} [A] (575 V)	58	74	85	106	124
	High accorded to accord (400 to	I _{L,N} [A] (690 V)	58	77	87	109	128
	High overload torque (160 %		F0	60	77	00	110
	Rated input current	I _{LN} [A] (550 V)	53	60	77	89	110
Д		I _{L,N} [A] (575 V)	51	58	74	85	106
	May poble areas section	I _{L,N} [A] (690 V)	50	58	77 2 x 70	87	109
	Max. cable cross-section	[mm ²] ^{4,6}			2 x 70		
	power supply	[AWG] ^{2,4,6}			2 x 2/)	
	Min. cable cross-section to	[mm ²] ^{4,6}			35		
	motor and power supply	[AWG] ^{2,4,6}			2		
	Min. cable cross-section to	[mm ²] ^{4,6}			10		
	brake and loadsharing	[AWG] ^{2,4,6}			8		
	Max. pre-fuses (mains) [-]/UL	[A] ¹	125	160	200	200	250
	Efficiency ³	/ \l	0.97	0.97	0.98	0.98	0.9
	Power loss	Normal overload [W]	2.0.	2.0.	2.00	2.00	0.0
	. 66666	High overload [W]					
	Weight	IP 00 [kg]			82		
	Weight	IP 21/Nema1 [kg]			96		
	Weight	IP 54/Nema12 [kg]			96		
	Enclosure	IP 00, IP 21/No	1	d ID EA/NI			

- 1. For type of fuse see section Fuses
- 2. American Wire Gauge.
- 3. Measured using 30 m screened motor cables at rated load and rated frequency.
- 4. Max. cable cross-section is the maximum possible cable cross-section allowed to be fitted on the terminals. Min. cable cross-section is the minimum allowed cross-section. Always comply with national and local regulations on min. cable cross-section.
- 5. Weight without shipping container.
- 6. Connection bolt power supply and motor: M10; Brake and loadsharing: M8



■ mains supply 3 x 525-690 V

cording to international r		VLT type	5122	5152	5202	5252	5302	5352
	Normal overload current (110 %		100	00:	050	000	000	4:0
	Output current	I _{VLT,N} [A] (525-550 V)	162	201	253	303	360	418
		I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A]	178	221	278	333	396	460
		(525-550 V)						
		I _{VLT.N} [A] (551-690 V)	155	192	242	290	344	400
		I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A]	171	211	266	319	378	440
		(551-690 V)	171	211	200	319	3/0	440
	Output	S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (550 V)	154	191	241	289	343	398
		S _{VLT.N} [kVA] (575 V)	154	191	241	289	343	398
		S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (690 V)	185	229	289	347	411	478
	Typical shaft output	[kW] (550 V)	110	132	160	200	250	315
A		[HP] (575 V)	150	200	250	300	350	400
		[kW] (690 V)	132	160	200	250	315	400
	High overload torque (160 %):							
	Output current	I _{VLT.N} [A] (525-550 V)	137	162	201	253	303	360
3000		I _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A]		0.40				= 40
		(525-550 V)	206	243	302	380	455	540
	P —	I _{VLT,N} [A] (551-690 V)	131	155	192	242	290	344
		l _{VLT, MAX} (60 s) [A]						
			197	233	288	363	435	516
	Outout	(551-690 V) S _{VLT.N} [kVA] (550 V)	131	154	191	241	289	343
	Output	S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (575 V)	130	154	191	241	289	343
		S _{VLT,N} [kVA] (575 V)	157	185	229	289	347	411
	Typical shaft output	[kW] (550 V)	90	110	132	160	200	250
	Typical Shart Output	[HP] (575 V)	125	150	200	250	300	350
		[kW] (690 V)	110	132	160	200	250	315
	Max. cable cross-section	[KVV] (090 V) [mm ²] ^{4,6}		x 70	100		x 185	010
	to motor	[AWG]2,4,6		x 2/0			350 mcm	
	Max. cable cross-section	[mm ²] ^{4,6}		x 70			x 185	
	to loadsharing and brake	[AWG] ^{2,4,6}	2 :	x 2/0		2 x 3	350 mcm	
	Normal overload current (110 %							
	Rated input current	I _{L,N} [A] (550 V)	158	198	245	299	355	408
		I _{L.N} [A] (575 V)	151	189	234	286	339	390
		I _{L.N} [A] (690 V)	155	197	240	296	352	400
	High overload torque (160 %):	1 [4] (550.10	100	150	100	0.45	000	055
	Rated input current	I _{L,N} [A] (550 V)	130	158	198	245	299	355
		I _{L,N} [A] (575 V)	124	151	189	234	286	339
88	May poble organ section	I _{L.N} [A] (690 V)	128	155 v 70	197	240	296	352
	Max. cable cross-section	[mm ²] ^{4,6}		x 70			x 185	
	power supply	[AWG] ^{2,4,6}	2 :	x 2/0			350 mcm	
4\$0 000	Min. cable cross-section	[mm ²] ^{4,6}				35		
0000	to motor and power supply	[AWG] ^{2,4,6}				2		
	Min. cable cross-section	[mm ²] ^{4,6}				10		
	to brake and loadsharing	[AWG] ^{2,4,6}				8		
	Max. pre-fuses (mains)							
ln	[-]/UL	[A] ¹	315	350	350	400	500	550
	Efficiency ³					0,98		
	Power loss	Normal overload [W]				0,50		
	1 OWEI 1033	High overload [W]						
	Weight	IP 00 [kg]	82	91	112	123	138	151
	Weight	IP 21/Nema1 [kg]	96	104	125	136	151	165
				104	120	100	101	100
	Weight	IP 54/Nema12 [kg]	96	104	125	136	151	165



- 1. For type of fuse see section Fuses
- 2. American Wire Gauge.
- 3. Measured using 30 m screened motor cables at rated load and rated frequency.
- 4. Max. cable cross-section is the maximum possible cable cross-section allowed to be fitted on the terminals. Min. cable cross-section is the minimum allowed cross-section. Always comply with national and local regulations on min. cable cross-section.
- 5. Weight without shipping container.
- 6. Connection bolt power supply and motor: M10; Brake and loadsharing: M8

■ Fuses

UL compliance

To comply with UL/cUL approvals, pre-fuses according to the table below must be used.

200-240 V

VLT	Bussmann	SIBA	Littel fuse	Ferraz-Shawmut
5001	KTN-R10	5017906-010	KLN-R10	ATM-R10 or A2K-10R
5002	KTN-R10	5017906-010	KLN-R10	ATM-R10 or A2K-10R
5003	KTN-R25	5017906-016	KLN-R15	ATM-R15 or A2K-15R
5004	KTN-R20	5017906-020	KLN-R20	ATM-R20 or A2K-20R
5005	KTN-R25	5017906-025	KLN-R25	ATM-R25 or A2K-25R
5006	KTN-R30	5012406-032	KLN-R30	ATM-R30 or A2K-30R
5008	KTN-R50	5014006-050	KLN-R50	A2K-50R
5011	KTN-R60	5014006-063	KLN-R60	A2K-60R
5016	KTN-R85	5014006-080	KLN-R80	A2K-80R
5022	KTN-R125	2028220-125	KLN-R125	A2K-125R
5027	KTN-R125	2028220-125	KLN-R125	A2K-125R
5032	KTN-R150	2028220-160	L25S-150	A25X-150
5042	KTN-R200	2028220-200	L25S-200	A25X-200
5052	KTN-R250	2028220-250	L25S-250	A25X-250

380-500 V



	Bussmann	SIBA	Littel fuse	Ferraz-Shawmut
5001	KTS-R6	5017906-006	KLS-R6	ATM-R6 or A6K-6R
5002	KTS-R6	5017906-006	KLS-R6	ATM-R6 or A6K-6R
5003	KTS-R10	5017906-010	KLS-R10	ATM-R10 or A6K-10R
5004	KTS-R10	5017906-010	KLS-R10	ATM-R10 or A6K-10R
5005	KTS-R15	5017906-016	KLS-R16	ATM-R16 or A6K-16R
5006	KTS-R20	5017906-020	KLS-R20	ATM-R20 or A6K-20R
5008	KTS-R25	5017906-025	KLS-R25	ATM-R25 or A6K-25R
5011	KTS-R30	5012406-032	KLS-R30	A6K-30R
5016	KTS-R40	5012406-040	KLS-R40	A6K-40R
5022	KTS-R50	5014006-050	KLS-R50	A6K-50R
5027	KTS-R60	5014006-063	KLS-R60	A6K-60R
5032	KTS-R80	2028220-100	KLS-R80	A6K-180R
5042	KTS-R100	2028220-125	KLS-R100	A6K-100R
5052	KTS-R125	2028220-125	KLS-R125	A6K-125R
5062	KTS-R150	2028220-160	KLS-R150	A6K-150R
5072	FWH-220	2028220-200	L50S-225	A50-P225
5102	FWH-250	2028220-250	L50S-250	A50-P250
5122*	FWH-300	2028220-315	L50S-300	A50-P300
5152*	FWH-350	2028220-315	L50S-350	A50-P350
5202*	FWH-400	206xx32-400	L50S-400	A50-P400
5252*	FWH-500	206xx32-500	L50S-500	A50-P500
5302*	FWH-600	206xx32-600	L50S-600	A50-P600
5350	FWH-700	206xx32-700	L50S-700	A50-P700
5450	FWH-800	206xx32-800	L50S-800	A50-P800
5500	FWH-800	206xx32-800	L50S-800	A50-P800

^{*} Circuit Breakers manufactured by General Electric, Cat. No. SKHA36AT0800, with rating plugs listed below can be used to meet UL-requirements:

rating plug No.	SRPK800 A 300
rating plug No.	SRPK800 A 400
rating plug No.	SRPK800 A 400
rating plug No.	SRPK800 A 500
rating plug No.	SRPK800 A 600
	rating plug No. rating plug No. rating plug No.

525-600 V

	Bussmann	SIBA	Littel fuse	Ferraz-Shawmut
5001	KTS-R3	5017906-004	KLS-R003	A6K-3R
5002	KTS-R4	5017906-004	KLS-R004	A6K-4R
5003	KT-R5	5017906-005	KLS-R005	A6K-5R
5004	KTS-R6	5017906-006	KLS-R006	A6K-6R
5005	KTS-R8	5017906-008	KLS-R008	A6K-8R
5006	KTS-R10	5017906-010	KLS-R010	A6K-10R
5008	KTS-R15	5017906-016	KLS-R015	A6K-15R
5011	KTS-R20	5017906-020	KLS-R020	A6K-20R
5016	KTS-R30	5017906-030	KLS-R030	A6K-30R
5022	KTS-R35	5014006-040	KLS-R035	A6K-35R
5027	KTS-R45	5014006-050	KLS-R045	A6K-45R
5032	KTS-R60	5014006-063	KLS-R060	A6K-60R
5042	KTS-R75	5014006-080	KLS-R075	A6K-80R
5052	KTS-R90	5014006-100	KLS-R090	A6K-90R
5062	KTS-R100	5014006-100	KLS-R100	A6K-100R



525-600 V (UL) and 525-690 V (CE) drives

	Bussmann	SIBA	FERRAZ-SHAWMUT
5042	170M3013	2061032,125	6.6URD30D08A0125
5052	170M3014	2061032,16	6.6URD30D08A0160
5062	170M3015	2061032,2	6.6URD30D08A0200
5072	170M3015	2061032,2	6.6URD30D08A0200
5102	170M3016	2061032,25	6.6URD30D08A0250
5122	170M3017	2061032,315	6.6URD30D08A0315
5152	170M3018	2061032,35	6.6URD30D08A0350
5202	170M4011	2061032,35	6.6URD30D08A0350
5252	170M4012	2061032,4	6.6URD30D08A0400
5302	170M4014	2061032,5	6.6URD30D08A0500
5352	170M5011	2062032,55	6.6URD32D08A550

KTS-fuses from Bussmann may substitute KTN for 240 V drives. FWH-fuses from Bussmann may substitute FWX for 240 V drives.

KLSR fuses from LITTEL FUSE may substitute KLNR fuses for 240 V drives. L50S fuses from LITTEL FUSE may substitute L25S fuses for 240 V drives.

A6KR fuses from FERRAZ SHAWMUT may substitute A2KR for 240 V drives. A50X fuses from FERRAZ SHAWMUT may substitute A25X for 240 V drives.

Non UL compliance

If UL/cUL is not to be complied with, we recommend the above mentioned fuses or:

VLT 5001-5027	200-240 V	type gG
VLT 5032-5052	200-240 V	type gR
VLT 5001-5062	380-500 V	type gG
VLT 5072-5102	380-500 V	type gR
VLT 5122-5302	380-500 V	type gG
VLT 5350-5500	380-500 V	type gR
VLT 5001-5062	525-600 V	type aG

Not following the recommendation may result in unnecessary damage of the drive in case of malfunction. Fuses must be designed for protection in a circuit capable of supplying a maximum of 100000 A_{rms} (symmetrical), 500/600 V maximum.



■ Mechanical dimensions

All the below listed measurements are in mm.

All the below listed measurements are in mm.	Δ.	Б	0	Б		l-	- - /	T-1
Bookstyle IP 20	A	В	С	D	a	b	ab/be	Ту
5001 - 5003 200 - 240 V								
	395	90	260		384	70	100	Α
5001 - 5005 380 - 500 V								
5004 - 5006 200 - 240 V	395	130	260		384	70	100	Α
5006 - 5011 380 - 500 V								
Compact IP 00								
5032 - 5052 200 - 240 V	800	370	335		780	270	225	В
5122 - 5152 380 - 500 V	1046	408	3732)		1001	304	225	J
5202 - 5302 380 - 500 V	1327	408	373 ²⁾		1282	304	225	<u>J</u>
5350 - 5500 380 - 500 V	1896	1099	494		1847	1065	4001)	
5042 - 5152 525 - 690 V	1046	408	3732)		1001	304	225	<u>J</u>
5202 - 5352 525 - 690 V	1327	408	373 ²⁾		1282	304	225	J
Compact IP 20								
5001 - 5003 200 - 240 V	395	220	160		384	200	100	С
5001 - 5005 380 - 500 V								
5004 - 5006 200 - 240 V								
5006 - 5011 380 - 500 V	395	220	200		384	200	100	С
5001 - 5011 525 - 600 V (IP 20 and Nema 1)								
5008 200 - 240 V								
5016 - 5022 380 - 500 V	560	242	260		540	200	200	D
	300	242	200		040	200	200	D
5016 - 5022 525 - 600 V (Nema 1)								
5011 - 5016 200 - 240 V								
5027 - 5032 380 - 500 V	700	242	260		680	200	200	D
5027 - 5032 525 - 600 V (Nema 1)								
5022 - 5027 200 - 240 V								
5042 - 5062 380 - 500 V	800	308	296		780	270	200	D
5042 - 5062 525 - 600 V (Nema 1) 5072 - 5102 380 - 500 V	800	370	335		780	330	225	D
Compact Nema 1/IP20/IP21	800	370	300		700	330	220	D
5032 - 5052 200 - 240 V	954	370	335		780	270	225	Е
5122 - 5152 380 - 500 V	1208	420	373 ²⁾		1154	304	225	J
5202 - 5302 380 - 500 V	1588	420	373 ²⁾		1535	304	225	J
5350 - 5500 380 - 500 V	2010	1200	600		-	-	400 ¹⁾	<u> </u>
5042 - 5152 525 - 690 V	1208	420	373 ²⁾		1154	304	225	J
5202 - 5352 525 - 690 V	1588	420	373 ²⁾		1535	304	225	J
Compact IP 54/Nema 12		120			1000			
5001 - 5003 200 - 240 V								
	460	282	195	85	260	258	100	F
5001 - 5005 380 - 500 V 5004 - 5006 200 - 240 V								
	530	282	195	85	330	258	100	F
5006 - 5011 380 - 500 V								
5008 - 5011 200 - 240 V	810	350	280	70	560	326	200	F
5016 - 5027 380 - 500 V								
5016 - 5027 200 - 240 V	940	400	290	70	690	375	200	F
5032 - 5062 380 - 500 V	940	400	280	70	090	375	200	
5032 - 5052 200 - 240 V	937	495	421	-	830	374	225	G
5072 - 5102 380 - 500 V	940	400	360	70	690	375	225	F
5122 - 5152 380 - 500 V	1208	420	373 ²⁾	-	1154	304	225	J
5202 - 5302 380 - 500 V	1588	420	3732)		1535	304	225	J
5350 - 5500 380 - 500 V	2010	1200	600	-	-	-	4001)	Н
5042 - 5152 525 - 690 V	1208	420	3732)	-	1154	304	225	J
5202 - 5352 525 - 690 V	1588	420	373 ²⁾		1535	304	225	J

ab: Minimum space above enclosure'

Rittal cabinet

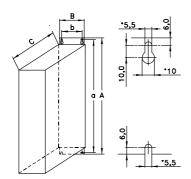
be: Minimum space below enclosure

¹⁾ Only above enclosure (ab) IP 00 when built in a

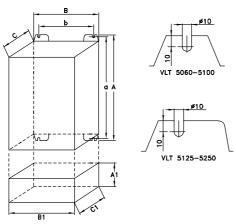
²⁾ With disconnect, add 44 mm.



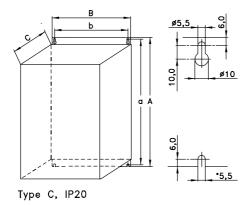
■ Mechanical dimensions, cont.

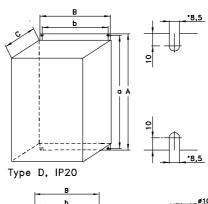


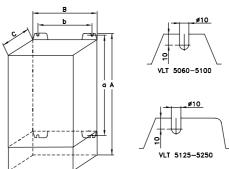
Type A, IP20



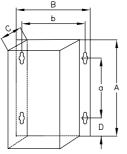
Type B, IP00 With option and enclosure IP20

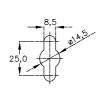




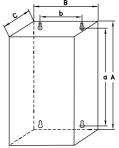


Type E, IP20/NEMA 1 with terminals





Type F, IP54



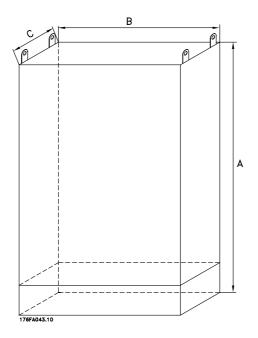


Type G, IP54

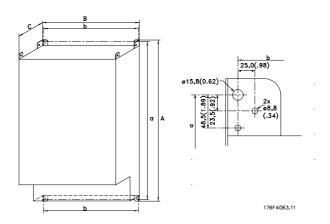
175ZA577.12



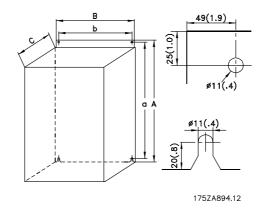
■ Mechanical dimensions (cont.)



Type H, IP 20, IP 54



Type I, IP 00



Type J, IP 00, IP 21, IP 54



■ Mechanical installation

Please pay attention to the requirements that apply to integration and field mounting kit, see the below list. The information given in the list must be observed to avoid serious damage or injury, especially when installing large units.

The frequency converter *must* be installed vertically.

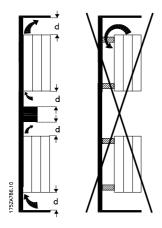
The frequency converter is cooled by means of air circulation. For the unit to be able to release its cooling air, the minimum distance over and below the unit must be as shown in the illustration below. To protect the unit from overheating, it must be ensured that the ambient temperature does not rise above the max. temperature stated for the frequency converter and that the 24-hour average temperature is not exceeded. The max. temperature and 24-hour average can be seen from the General Technical Data. If the ambient temperature is in the range of 45°C -55° C, derating of the frequency converter will become relevant, see Derating for ambient temperature. The service life of the frequency converter will be reduced if derating for ambient temperature is not taken into account.



■ Installation of VLT 5001-5302

All frequency converters must be installed in a way that ensures proper cooling.

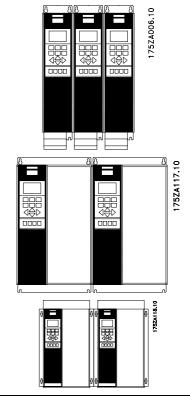
Cooling



All Bookstyle and Compact units require a minimum space above and below the enclosure.

Side by side/flange by flange

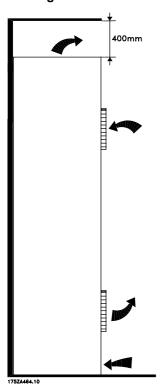
All frequency converters can be mounted side by side/flange by flange.



	d [mm]	Comments
Bookstyle		
VLT 5001-5006, 200-240 V	100	
VLT 5001-5011, 380-500 V	100	Installation on a plane, vertical surface (no spacers)
Compact (all enclosure types)		
VLT 5001-5006, 200-240 V	100	
VLT 5001-5011, 380-500 V	100	Installation on a plane, vertical surface (no spacers)
VLT 5001-5011, 525-600 V	100	
VLT 5008-5027, 200-240 V	200	
VLT 5016-5062, 380-500 V	200	
VLT 5072-5102, 380-500 V	225	Installation on a plane, vertical surface (no spacers)
VLT 5016-5062, 525-600 V	200	
VLT 5032-5052, 200-240 V	225	Installation on a plane, vertical surface (no spacers)
VLT 5122-5302, 380-500 V	225	
VLT 5042-5352, 525-690 V	225	IP 54 filter mats must be changed when they are dirty.



■ Installation of VLT 5350-5500 380-500 V Compact Nema 1 (IP 20) and IP 54 Cooling

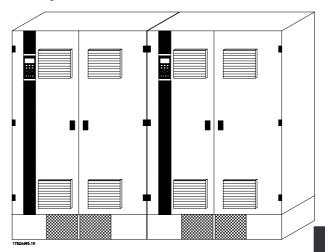


All units in the above-mentioned series require a minimum space of 400 mm above the enclosure and must be installed on a plane floor. This applies to both Nema 1 (IP 20) and IP 54 units.

Gaining access to the VLT 5350-5500 requires a minimum space of 605 mm in front of the frequency converter.

Filter mats in IP 54 units have to be changed regularly depending on the operating environment.

Side-by-side



Compact Nema 1 (IP 20) and IP 54

All Nema 1 (IP 20) and IP 54 units in the above-mentioned series can be installed side by side without any space between them, since these units do not require cooling on the sides.

■IP 00 VLT 5350 - 5500 380 - 500 V

The IP 00 unit is designed for installation in a cabinet when installed according to the instructions in the

VLT 5350 - 5500 Installation Guide, MG.56.AX.YY. Please note, that the same conditions as for Nema 1 / IP 54 must be fulfilled.



■ Electrical installation

The voltage on the frequency converter is dangerous when the unit is connected to mains. Incorrect installation of the motor or

the frequency converter may lead to material damage or serious injury or it may be fatal. Consequently, the instructions in this manual as well as national and local rules and safety regulations must be complied with. Touching the electrical parts may be fatal, even after the mains supply has been disconnected.

Using VLT 5001-5006, 200-240 V and 380-500 V: wait at least 4 minutes.

Using VLT 5008-5052, 200-240 V: wait at least 15 minutes.

Using VLT 5008-5062, 380-500 V: wait at least 15 minutes.

Using VLT 5072-5302, 380-500 V: wait at least 20 minutes.

Using VLT 5350-5500, 380-500 V: wait at least 15 minutes.

Using VLT 5001-5005, 525-600 V: wait at least 4 minutes.

Using VLT 5006-5022, 525-600 V: wait at least 15 minutes.

Using VLT 5027-5062, 525-600 V: wait at least 30 minutes.

Using VLT 5042-5352, 525-690 V: wait at least 20 minutes.



NB!:

It is the user's or certified electrician's responsibility to ensure correct earthing and protection in accordance with applicable national and local norms and standards.

■ High voltage test

A high voltage test can be carried out by shortcircuiting terminals U, V, W, L₁, L₂ and L₃ and energizing by max. 2.15 kV DC for one second between this short-circuit and the chassis.



NB!:

The RFI switch must be closed (position ON) when high voltage tests are carried out (see section RFI Switch).

The mains and motor connection must be interrupted in the case of high voltage tests of the total installation if the leakage currents are too high.

■ Safety earthing



NB!:

The frequency converter has a high leakage current and must be earthed appropriately for safety reasons. Use earth terminal

(see section Electrical installation, power cables), which enables reinforced earthing. Apply national safety regulations.

■ Extra protection (RCD)

ELCB relays, multiple protective earthing or earthing can be used as extra protection, provided that local safety regulations are complied with.

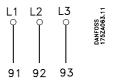
In the case of an earth fault, a DC content may develop in the faulty current.

If ELCB relays are used, local regulations must be observed. Relays must be suitable for protection of 3-phase equipment with a bridge rectifier and for a brief discharge on power-up.

See also the section Special Conditions in the Design Guide.

■ Electrical installation - mains supply

Connect the three mains phases to terminals L₁, L₂, L₃.



■ Electrical installation - motor cables



If an unscreened cable is used, some EMC requirements are not complied with, see the Design Guide.

If the EMC specifications regarding emission are to be complied with, the motor cable must be screened, unless otherwise stated for the RFI filter in question. It is important to keep the motor cable as short as possible so as to reduce the noise level and leakage currents to a minimum.

The motor cable screen must be connected to the metal cabinet of the frequency converter and to the metal cabinet of the motor. The screen connections are to be made with the biggest possible surface (cable clamp). This is enabled by different installation devices in the different frequency converters.



Installation with twisted screen ends (pigtails) is to be avoided, since these spoil the screening effect at higher frequencies.

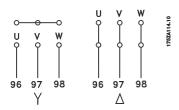
If it is necessary to break the screen to install a motor isolator or motor contactor, the screen must be continued at the lowest possible HF impedance.

The frequency converter has been tested with a given length of cable and a given cross-section of that cable. If the cross-section is increased, the cable capacitance - and thus the leakage current - increases, and the cable length must be reduced correspondingly.

When frequency converters are used together with LC filters to reduce the acoustic noise from a motor, the switching frequency must be set according to the LC filter instruction in *Parameter 411*. When setting the switching frequency higher than 3 kHz, the output current is derated in SFAVM mode. By changing *Parameter 446* to 60° AVM mode, the frequency at which the current is derated is moved upwards. Please see *Design Guide*.

■ Connection of motor

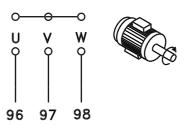
All types of 3-phased asynchronous standard motors can be used with the VLT 5000 Series.

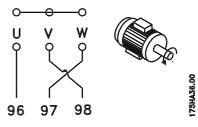


Normally, small motors are star-connected (200/400 V, Δ /Y).

Large motors are delta-connected (400/690 V, Δ /Y).

■ Direction of motor rotation



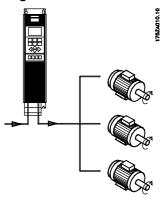


The factory setting is for clockwise rotation with the frequency transformer output connected as follows.

Terminal 96 connected to U-phase Terminal 97 connected to V-phase Terminal 98 connected to W-phase

The direction of motor rotation can be changed by switching two phases in the motor cable.

■ Parallel coupling of motors



Frequency converters are able to control several motors connected in parallel. If the motors are to have different rpm values, the motors must have different rated rpm values. Motor rpm is changed simultaneously, which means that the ratio between the rated rpm values is maintained across the range.

The total current consumption of the motors is not to exceed the maximum rated output current $I_{VLT,N}$ for the frequency converter.

Problems may arise at the start and at low rpm values if the motor sizes are widely different. This is because



the relatively high ohmic resistance in small motors calls for a higher voltage at the start and at low rpm values.

In systems with motors connected in parallel, the electronic thermal relay (ETR) of the frequency converter cannot be used as motor protection for the individual motor. Consequently, additional motor protection is required, such as thermistors in each motor (or individual thermal relays) suitable for frequency converter use.

Please note that the individual motor cable for each motor must be summed and is not to exceed the total motor cable length permitted.

■ Motor thermal protection

The electronic thermal relay in UL-approved frequency converters has received the UL-approval for single motor protection when parameter 128 has been set for *ETR Trip* and parameter 105 has been programmed to the rated motor current (see motor nameplate).

■ Electrical installation - brake cable

(Only standard with brake and extended with brake. Typecode: SB, EB, DE, PB).

No. Function

81, 82 Brake resistor terminals

The connection cable to the brake resistor must be screened. Connect the screen by means of cable clamps to the conductive back plate at the frequency converter and to the metal cabinet of the brake resistor. Size the brake cable cross-section to match the brake torque. See also Brake instructions, MI.90.FX.YY and MI.50.SX.YY for further information regarding safe installation.



NB!:

Please note that voltages up to 1099 V DC, depending on the supply voltage, may occur on the terminals.

■ Electrical installation - brake resistor temperature switch

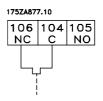
Torque: 0.5-0.6 Nm Screw size: M3

No.	Function
106, 104,	Brake resistor temperature switch.
105	

NB!:

This function is only available on VLT 5032-5052, 200-240 V; VLT 5122-5500, 380-500 V; and VLT 5042-5352, 525-690 V.

If the temperature of the brake resistor gets too high and the thermal switch drops out, the frequency converter will stop braking. The motor will start coasting. A KLIXON switch must be installed that is 'normally closed'. If this function is not used, 106 and 104 must be short-circuited together.



■ Electrical installation - loadsharing

(Only extended with typecode EB, EX, DE, DX).

No.	Function
88, 89	Loadsharing

Terminals for loadsharing



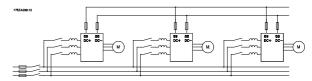
The connection cable must be screened and the max. length from the frequency converter to the DC bar is 25 metres.

Load sharing enables linking of the DC intermediate circuits of several frequency converters.

NB!:

Please note that voltages up to 1099 V DC may occur on the terminals.

Load sharing calls for extra equipment. For further information please consult Loadsharing Instructions MI.50.NX.XX.



■ Tightening-up torques and screw sizes

The table shows the torque required when fitting terminals to the frequency converter. For VLT 5001-5027 200-240 V, VLT 5001-5102 380-500 V and VLT 5001-5062 525-600 V, the cables must be fastened with screws. For VLT 5032 - 5052 200-240 V, VLT 5122-5500 380-500 V, VLT 5042-5352 525-690 V the cables must be fastened with bolts.



These figures apply to the following terminals:

Mains terminals

Nos 91, 92, 93 L1, L2, L3

Motor terminals

96, 97, 98 Nos U, V, W

Earth terminal

No 94, 95, 99

Brake resistor terminals

81, 82

Loadsharing

88, 89

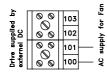
VLT type		Torque [Nm]	Screw/	Tool
200-240 V			Boltsize	
5001-5006		0,6	M3	Slotted screw
5008	IP20	1,8	M4	Slotted screw
5008-5011	IP54	1,8	M4	Slotted screw
5011-5022	IP20	3	M5	4 mm Allen wrench
5016-5022 ³¹⁾	IP54	3	M 5	4 mm Allen wrench
5027		6	M6	4 mm Allen wrench
5032-5052		11,3	M8 (bolt and stud)	
380-500 V				
5001-5011		0,6	M3	Slotted screw
5016-5022	IP20	1,8	M4	Slotted screw
5016-5027	IP54	1,8	M4	Slotted screw
5027-5042	IP20	3	M5	4 mm Allen wrench
5032-5042 ³⁾	IP54	3	M5	4 mm Allen wrench
5052-5062		6	M6	5 mm Allen wrench
5072-5102	IP20	15	M6	6 mm Allen wrench
	IP54 ²⁾	24	M8	8 mm Allen wrench
5122-5302 ⁴⁾		19	M10 bolt	
5350-5500 ⁵⁾		42	M12 bolt	
525-600 V				
5001-5011		0,6	M3	Slotted screw
5016-5027		1,8	M4	Slotted screw
5032-5042		3	M5	4 mm Allen wrench
5052-5062		6	M6	5 mm Allen wrench
525-690 V				
5042-5352 ⁴⁾		19	M10 bolt	

Brake terminals: 3,0 Nm, Nut: M6
 Brake and loadsharing: 14 Nm, M6 Allen screw
 IP54 with RFI - Line terminals 6Nm, Screw: M6 - 5 mm Allen wrench
 Loadsharing and brake terminals: 9,5 Nm; Bolt M8
 Brake terminals: 11,3 Nm; Bolt M8



■ Electrical installation - external fan supply

Torque 0,5-0,6 Nm Screwsize: M3





Available in 5122-5500, 380-500 V; 5042-5352, 525-690 V, 5032-5052, 200-240 V in all enclosure types.

Only for IP54 units in the power range VLT 5016-5102, 380-500 V and VLT 5008-5027, 200-240 V AC. If the drive is supplied by the DC bus (loadsharing), the internal fans are not supplied with AC power. In this case they must be supplied with an external AC supply.

■ Electrical installation - 24 Volt external DC supply

(Only extended versions. Typecode: PS, PB, PD, PF, DE, DX, EB, EX).

Torque: 0.5 - 0.6 Nm Screw size: M3

No. Function

35, 36 24 V external DC supply

External 24 V DC supply can be used as low-voltage supply to the control card and any option cards installed. This enables full operation of the LCP (incl. parameter setting) without connection to mains. Please note that a warning of low voltage will be given when 24 V DC has been connected; however, there will be no tripping. If 24 V external DC supply is connected or switched on at the same time as the mains supply, a time of min. 200 msec. must be set in parameter 120 *Start delay.*A pre-fuse of min. 6 Amp, slow-blow, can be fitted to protect the external 24 V DC supply. The power consumption is 15-50 W, depending on the load on the control card.



NB!:

Use 24 V DC supply of type PELV to ensure correct galvanic isolation (type PELV) on the control terminals of the frequency converter.

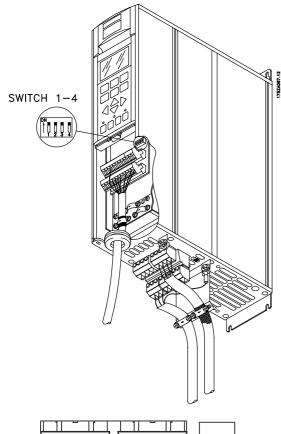
■ Electrical installation - relay outputs

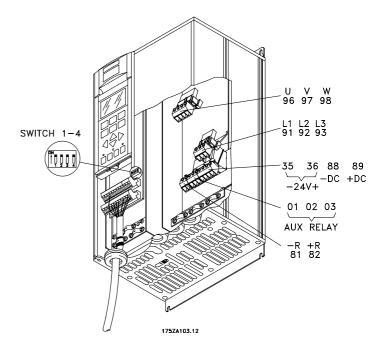
Torque: 0.5 - 0.6 Nm Screw size: M3

No.	Function
1-3	Relay output, 1+3 break, 1+2 make
	See parameter 323 of the Operating
	Instructions. See also General
	technical data.
4, 5	Relay output, 4+5 make See
	parameter 326 of the Operating
	Instructions.
	See also General technical data.

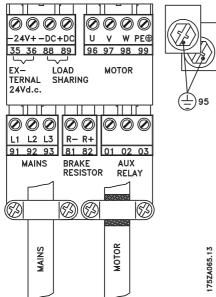


■ Electrical installation, power cables



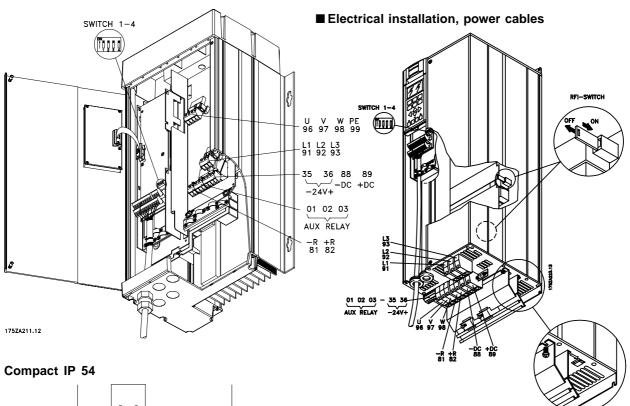


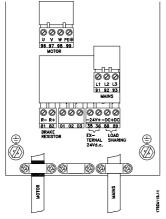
Compact IP 20/Nema 1



Bookstyle VLT 5001-5006 200-240 V VLT 5001-5011 380-500 V







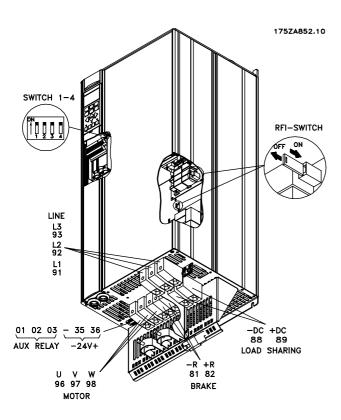
Compact IP 20/Nema 1 VLT 5008-5027 200-240 V VLT 5016-5062 380-500 V VLT 5016-5062 525-600 V

Compact

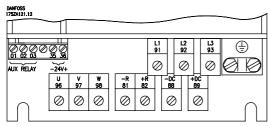
VLT 5001-5006 200-240 V VLT 5001-5011 380-500 V VLT 5001-5011 525-600 V



VLT 5016-5062 525-600 V

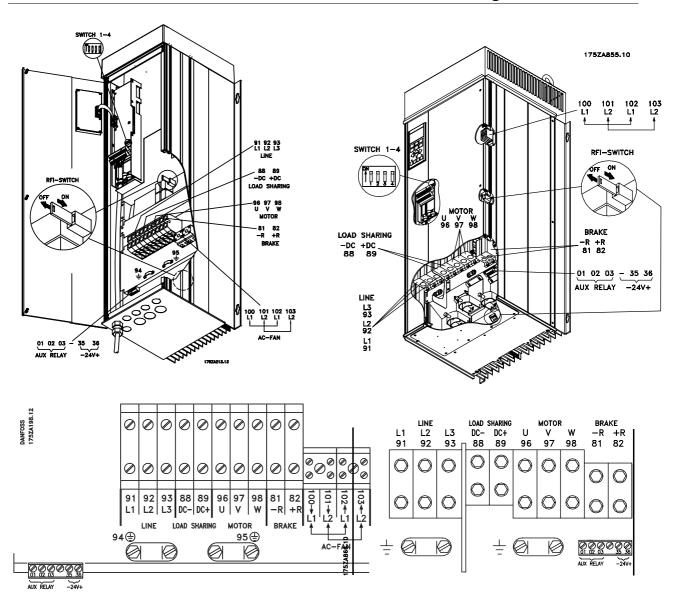


Compact IP 20 VLT 5072-5102 380-500 V



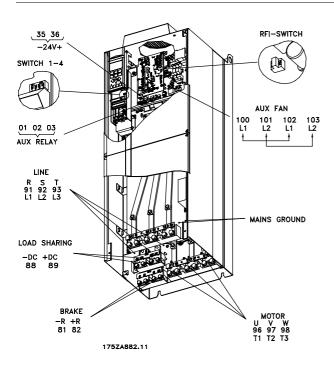
Compact IP 20/Nema 1 VLT 5008-5027 200-240 V VLT 5016-5102 380-500 V



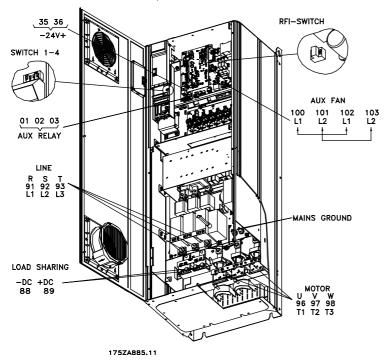


Compact IP 54 VLT 5008-5027 200-240 V VLT 5016-5062 380-500 V Compact IP 54 VLT 5072-5102 380-500 V



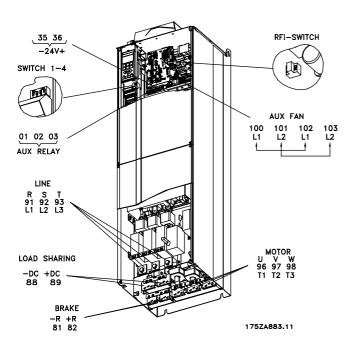


Compact IP 00 without disconnect and fuse VLT 5122-5152 380-500 V, VLT 5042-5152 525-690 V

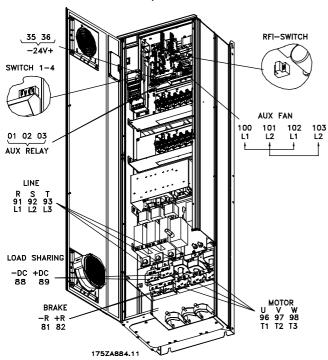


Compact IP 21/IP54 with disconnect and fuse VLT 5122-5152 380-500 V, VLT 5042-5152 525-690 V

Note: The RFI switch has no function in the 525-690 V drives.



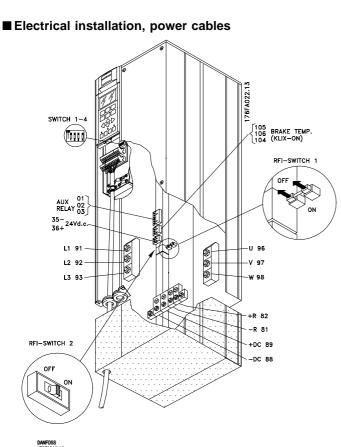
Compact IP 00 with disconnect and fuse VLT 5202-5302 380-500 V, VLT 5202-5352 525-690 V

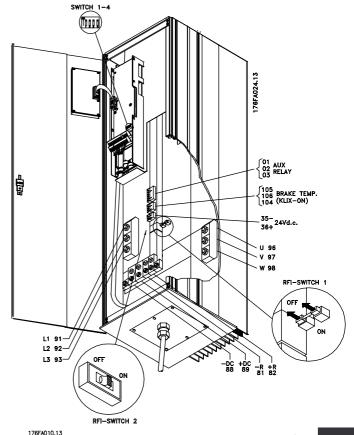


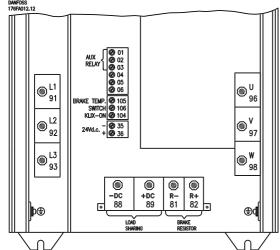
Compact IP 21/IP54 with disconnect and fuse VLT 5202-5302 380-500 V, VLT 5202-5352 525-690 V

Note: The RFI switch has no function in the 525-690 V drives.







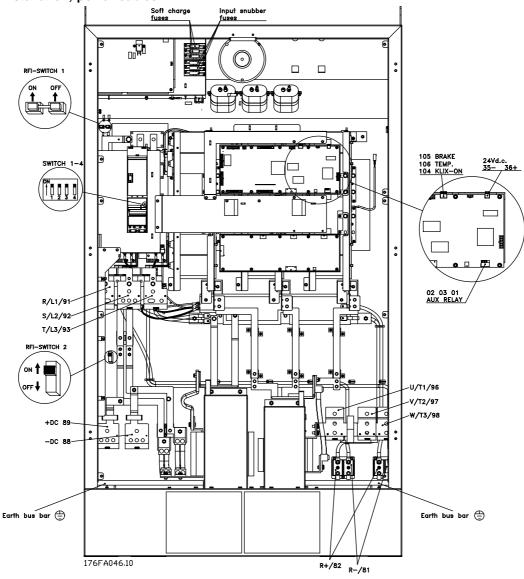


Compact IP 00/NEMA 1 (IP 20) VLT 5032-5052 200-240 V

Compact IP 54 VLT 5032-5052 200-240 V

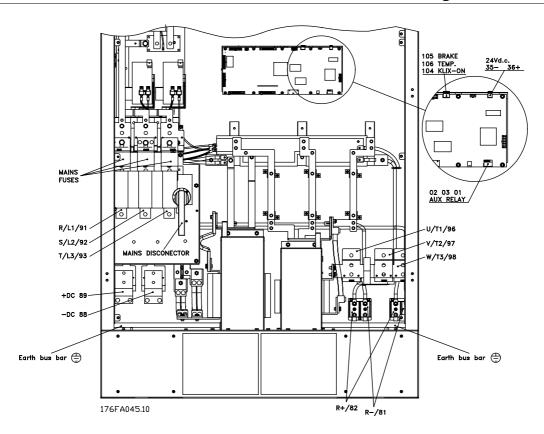


■ Electrical installation, power cables



Compact IP 00/Nema 1 (IP 20)/IP 54 without disconnector and mains fuses VLT 5350 - 5500 380 - 500 V



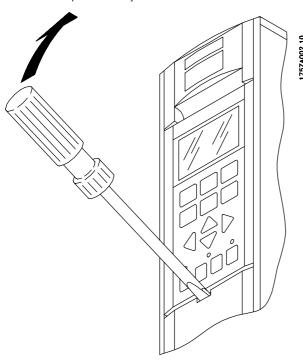


Compact IP 00/Nema 1 (IP 20)/IP 54 with disconnector and mains fuses VLT 5350 - 5500 380 - 500 V



■ Electrical installation - control cables

All terminals for the control cables are located under the protective cover of the frequency converter. The protective cover (see drawing) can be removed by means of a pointed object - a screwdriver or similar.

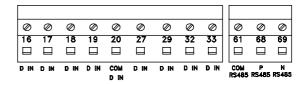


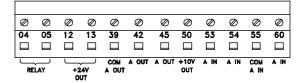
Once the protective cover has been removed, the actual EMC-correct installation can start. See drawings in the section, *EMC correct installation*.

Tightening-up torque: 0.5-0.6 Nm

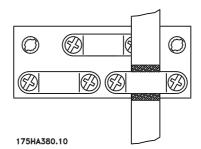
Screw size: M3

See section earthing of braided screened/armoured control cables.





175HA379.10

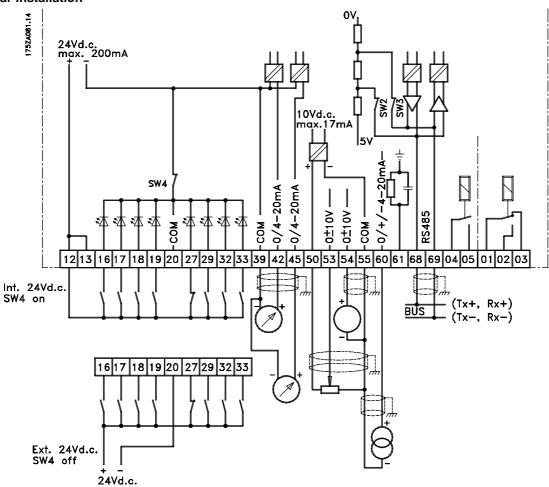




No.	Function
12, 13	Voltage supply to digital inputs For the 24 V DC to be usable for the digital inputs, switch 4 on the control card must be closed. position "ON".
16-33	Digital inputs/encoder inputs
20	Ground for digital inputs
39	Ground for analogue/digital outputs
42, 45	Analogue/digital outputs for indicating frequency, reference, current and torque
50	Supply voltage to potentiometer and thermistor 10 V DC
53, 54	Analogue reference input, voltage 0 - ±10 V
55	Ground for analogue reference inputs
60	Analogue reference input, current 0/4-20 mA
61	Termination for serial communication. See section <i>Bus connection.</i> This terminal is normally not to be used.
68, 69	RS 485 interface, serial communication. Where the frequency converter is connected to a bus, switches 2 and 3 (switches 1- 4) must be closed on the first and the last frequency converter. On the remaining frequency converters, switches 2 and 3 must be open. The factory setting is closed (position "ON").



■ Electrical installation



Conversion of analogue inputs

	Current	input	signal	to	voltage	input
--	---------	-------	--------	----	---------	-------

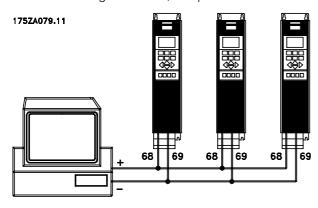
$0-20 \text{ mA} \Rightarrow 0-10 \text{ V}$	Connect 510 ohms resistor between input terminal
$4-20 \text{ mA} \Rightarrow 2-10 \text{ V}$	53 and 55 (terminal 54 and 55) and adjust minimum
	and maximum values in parameters 309 and 310
	(parameters 312 and 313).



■ Electrical installation - bus connection

The serial bus connection in accordance with the RS 485 (2-conductor) norm is connected to terminals 68/69 of the frequency converter (signals P and N). Signal P is the positive potential (TX+,RX+), while signal N is the negative potential (TX-,RX-).

If more than one frequency converter is to be connected to a given master, use parallel connections.



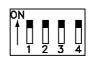
In order to avoid potential equalizing currents in the screen, the cable screen can be earthed via terminal 61, which is connected to the frame via an RC-link.

Bus termination

The bus must be terminated by a resistor network at both ends. For this purpose, set switches 2 and 3 on the control card for "ON".

■ DIP Switches 1-4

The dipswitch is located on the control card. It is used for serial communication, terminals 68 and 69. The switching position shown is the factory setting.



Switch 1 has no function.

Switches 2 and 3 are used for terminating an RS 485 interface, serial communication.

Switch 4 is used for separating the common potential for the internal 24 V DC supply from the common potential of the external 24 V DC supply.



NB!:

Please note that when Switch 4 is in position "OFF", the external 24 V DC supply is galvanically isolated from the frequency converter.



■ Electrical installation - EMC precautions

The following is a guideline to good engineering practice, when installing drives. Following these guidelines is advised, where compliance with EN 61000-6-3, EN 61000-6-4, EN 55011 or EN 61800-3 First environment is required. If the installation is in EN 61800-3 Second environment, i.e. industrial networks or in an installation that has its own transformer, it is acceptable to deviate from these guidelines. It is however not recommended. See also CE labelling, Emission and EMC test results under special conditions in the Design Guide for further details.

Good engineering practice to ensure EMC-correct electrical installation:

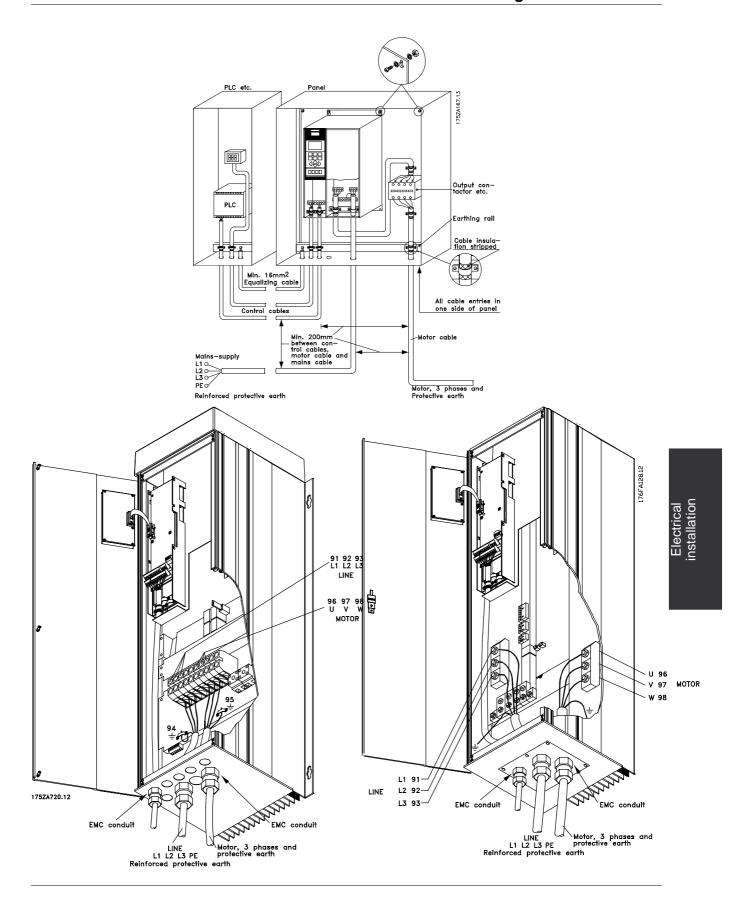
- Use only braided screened/armoured motor cables and braided screened/armoured control cables. The screen should provide a minimum coverage of 80%. The screen material must be metal, not limited to but typically copper, aluminium, steel or lead. There are no special requirements for the mains cable.
- Installations using rigid metal conduits are not required to use screened cable, but the motor cable must be installed in conduit separate from the control and mains cables. Full connection of the conduit from the drive to the motor is required. The EMC performance of flexible conduits varies a lot and information from the manufacturer must be obtained.
- Connect the screen/armour/conduit to earth at both ends for motor cables as well as for control cables. In some cases, it is not possible to connect the screen in both ends. In these cases, it is important to connect the screen at the frequency converter. See also Earthing of braided screened/armoured control cables.
- Avoid terminating the screen/armour with twisted ends (pigtails). Such a termination increases the high frequency impedance of the screen, which reduces its effectiveness at high frequencies. Use low impedance cable clamps or EMC cable glands instead.
- It is important to ensure good electrical contact between the mounting plate on which the frequency converter is installed and the metal chassis of the frequency converter. However, this does not apply to IP54 units as they are designed for wall-mounting and VLT 5122-5502 380-500 V, 5042-5352 525-690 V and VLT 5032-5052 200-240 V in IP20/NEMA 1 enclosure.
- Use starwashers and galvanically conductive installation plates to secure good electrical connections for IP00 and IP20 installations.

- Avoid using unscreened/unarmoured motor or control cables inside cabinets housing the drive(s), whenever this can be avoided.
- An uninterrupted high frequency connection between the frequency converter and the motor units is required for IP54 units.

The illustration shows an example of an EMC-correct electrical installation of an IP 20 frequency converter; the frequency converter has been fitted in an installation cabinet with an output contactor and connected to a PLC, which in this example is installed in a separate cabinet. In IP 54 units and VLT 5032-5052, 200-240 V in IP20/IP21/NEMA 1 enclosure screened cables are connected by using EMC conduits to ensure proper EMC performance. See illustration. Other ways of making the installation may have as good an EMC performance, provided the above guide lines to engineering practice are followed.

Please note, that when the installation is not carried through according to the guideline as well as when unscreened cables and control wires are used, some emission requirements are not complied with, although the immunity requirements are fulfilled. See the section *EMC test results* in the Design Guide for further details.



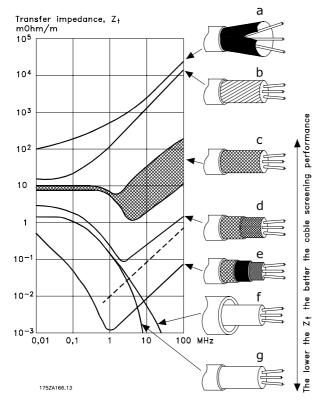




■ Use of emc-correct cables

Braided screened/armoured cables are recommended to optimise EMC immunity of the control cables and the EMC emission from the motor cables.

The ability of a cable to reduce the in- and outgoing radiation of electric noise depends on the transfer impedance (Z_T). The screen of a cable is normally designed to reduce the transfer of electric noise; however, a screen with a lower transfer impedance (Z_T) value is more effective than a screen with a higher transfer impedance (Z_T).



Transfer impedance (Z_T) is rarely stated by cable manufacturers, but it is often possible to estimate transfer impedance (Z_T) by assessing the physical design of the cable.

Transfer impedance (Z_T) can be assessed on the basis of the following factors:

- The conductibility of the screen material.
- The contact resistance between the individual screen conductors.
- The screen coverage, i.e. the physical area of the cable covered by the screen - often stated as a percentage value.
- Screen type, i.e. braided or twisted pattern.

Aluminium-clad with copper wire.

Twisted copper wire or armoured steel wire cable.

Single-layer braided copper wire with varying percentage screen coverage.

This is the typical Danfoss reference cable.

Double-layer braided copper wire.

Twin layer of braided copper wire with a magnetic, screened/armoured intermediate layer.

Cable that runs in copper tube or steel tube.

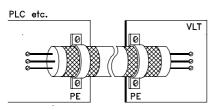
Lead cable with 1.1 mm wall thickness.

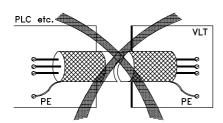


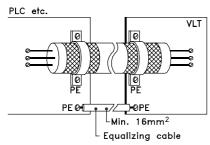
■ Electrical installation - earthing of control cables

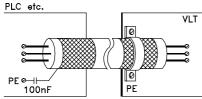
Generally speaking, control cables must be braided screened/armoured and the screen must be connected by means of a cable clamp at both ends to the metal cabinet of the unit.

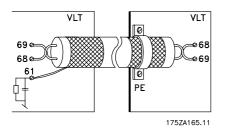
The drawing below indicates how correct earthing is carried out and what to be done if in doubt.











Correct earthing

Control cables and cables for serial communication must be fitted with cable clamps at both ends to ensure the best possible electrical contact

Wrong earthing

Do not use twisted cable ends (pigtails), since these increase the screen impedance at high frequencies.

Protection with respect to earth potential between PLC and VLT

If the earth potential between the frequency converter and the PLC (etc.) is different, electric noise may occur that will disturb the whole system. This problem can be solved by fitting an equalising cable, to be placed next to the control cable. Minimum cable cross-section: 16 mm ².

For 50/60 Hz earth loops

If very long control cables are used, 50/60 Hz earth loops may occur. This problem can be solved by connecting one end of the screen to earth via a 100nF capacitor (keeping leads short).

Cables for serial communication

Low-frequency noise currents between two frequency converters can be eliminated by connecting one end of the screen to terminal 61. This terminal is connected to earth via an internal RC link. It is recommended to use twisted-pair cables to reduce the differential mode interference between the conductors.



■RFI switch

Mains supply isolated from earth:

If the frequency converter is supplied from an isolated mains source (IT mains) or TT/TN-S mains with grounded leg, the RFI switch is recommended to be turned off (OFF)¹⁾. For further reference, see IEC 364-3. In case optimum EMC performance is needed, parallel motors are connected or the motor cable length is above 25 m, it is recommended to set the switch in ON position.

In OFF position, the internal RFI capacities (filter capacitors) between the chassis and the intermediate circuit are cut off to avoid damage to the intermediate circuit and to reduce the earth capacity currents (according to IEC 61800-3).

Please also refer to the application note VLT on IT mains, MN.90.CX.02. It is important to use isolation monitors that are capable for use together with power electronics (IEC 61557-8).

NB!:

The RFI switch is not to be operated with mains connected to the unit. Check that the mains supply has been disconnected before operating the RFI switch.



NB!:

Open RFI switch is only allowed at factory set switching frequencies.



The RFI switch connects the capacitors galvanically to earth.

The red switches are operated by means of e.g. a screwdriver. They are set in the OFF position when they are pulled out and in ON position when they are pushed in. Factory setting is ON.



Mains supply connected to earth:

The RFI switch must be in ON position in order for the frequency converter to comply with the EMC standard.

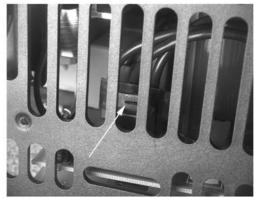
1) Not possible with 5042-5352, 525-690 V units.

Position of RFI switches



Bookstyle IP 20

VLT 5001 - 5006 200 - 240 V VLT 5001 - 5011 380 - 500 V



Compact IP 20/NEMA 1

VLT 5001 - 5006 200 - 240 V VLT 5001 - 5011 380 - 500 V

VLT 5001 - 5011 525 - 600 V





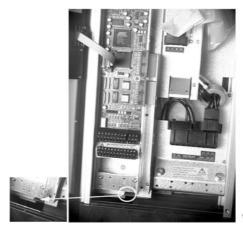
Compact IP 20/NEMA 1 VLT 5008 200 - 240 V VLT 5016 - 5022 380 - 500 V VLT 5016 - 5022 525 - 600 V



Compact IP 20/NEMA 1 VLT 5011 - 5016 200 - 240 V VLT 5027 - 5032 380 - 500 V VLT 5027 - 5032 525 - 600 V



Compact IP 20/NEMA 1 VLT 5022 - 5027 200 - 240 V VLT 5042 - 5102 380 - 500 V VLT 5042 - 5062 525 - 600 V



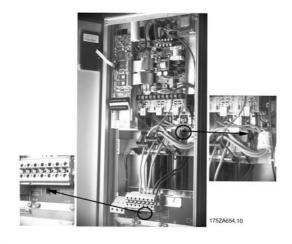
175ZA647.1

Compact IP 54 VLT 5001 - 5006 200 - 240 V VLT 5001 - 5011 380 - 500 V

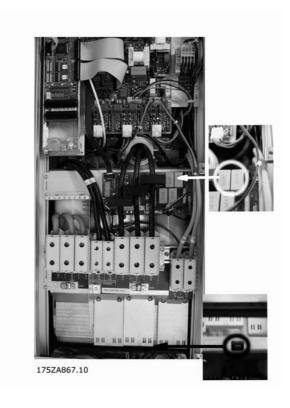




Compact IP 54 VLT 5008 - 5011 200 - 240 V VLT 5016 - 5027 380 - 500 V



Compact IP 54 VLT 5016 - 5027 200 - 240 V VLT 5032 - 5062 380 - 500 V

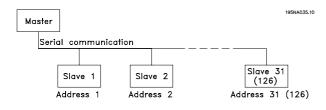


Compact IP 54 VLT 5072 - 5102 380 - 500 V



■ Serial communication

■ Protocols



■ Telegram Traffic

Control and response telegrams

Telegram traffic in a master-slave system is controlled by the master. A maximum of 31 slaves can be connected to a master, unless repeaters are used. If repeaters are used, a maximum of 126 slaves can be connected to a master.

The master constantly sends telegrams addressed to the slaves and waits for response telegrams from them. The slave's response time is a maximum of 50 ms.

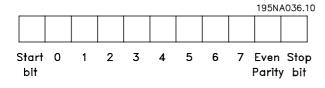
Only a slave that has received an error-free telegram, addressed to that slave can send a response telegram.

Broadcast

A master can send the same telegram simultaneously to all slaves connected to the bus. During this broadcast communication the slave does not send any response telegrams back to the master as to whether the telegram has been correctly received. Broadcast communication is set up in address format (ADR), see *Telegram structure*.

Content of a character (byte)

Each character transferred begins with a start bit. Then 8 data bits are transferred, corresponding to a byte. Each character is secured via a parity bit, which is set at "1" when it reaches parity (i.e. when there is an equal number of 1's in the 8 data bits and the parity bit in total). A character is completed by a stop bit, thus consisting of 11 bits in all.



■ Telegram Structure

Each telegram begins with a start character (STX) = 02 Hex, followed by a byte that denotes the length of the telegram (LGE) and a byte that denotes

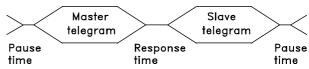
the address of the frequency converter (ADR). Then follows a number of data bytes (variable, depending on the type of telegram). The telegram is completed by a data control byte (BCC).



Telegram timing

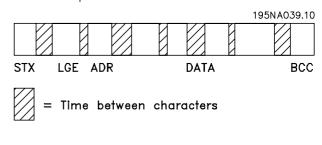
The communication speed between a master and a slave depends on the baud rate. The frequency converter's baud rate must be the same as the master's baud rate and be selected in parameter 501 *Baudrate*. After a response telegram from the slave, there must be a pause of at least 2 characters (22 bits) before the master can send a new telegram. At a baud rate of 9600 baud there must be a pause of at least 2.3 ms. When the master has completed the telegram, the slave's response time back to the master will be a maximum of 20 ms, and there will be pause of at least 2 characters.

195NA038.10



Pause time, min: 2 characters
Response time, min: 2 characters
Response time, max: 20 ms

The time between the individual characters in a telegram may not exceed 2 characters and the telegram must be completed within 1.5 x nominal telegram time. At a baud rate of 9600 baud and a telegram length of 16 bytes the telegram will be completed after 27.5 msec.



03



Telegram length (LGE)

The telegram length is the number of data bytes plus the address byte ADR plus the data control byte BCC.

The length of telegrams with 4 data bytes is:

LGE = 4 + 1 + 1 = 6 bytes

The length of telegrams with 12 data bytes is:

LGE = 12 + 1 + 1 = 14 bytes

The length of telegrams containing texts is 10+n bytes. 10 represents the fixed characters, while the 'n' is variable (depending on the length of the text).

Frequency converter address (ADR)

Two different address formats are used, with the frequency converter's address range being either 1-31 or 1-126.

1. Address format 1-31

The byte for address range 1-31 has the

following profile: 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

195NA040.10

0

Bit 7 = 0 (address format 1-31 active)

Bit 6 is not used

Bit 5 = 1: Broadcast, address bits (0-4) are not used

Bit 5 = 0: No Broadcast

Bit 0-4 = Frequency converter address 1-31

2. Address format 1-126

The byte for address range 1 - 126 has the following profile:

†0	ollowir 7	ng pr 6	ofile: 5	4	3	2	1	0
	1							

195NA041.10

Bit 7 = 1 (address format 1-126 active)

Bit 0-6 = Frequency converter address 1-126

Bit 0-6 = 0 Broadcast

The slave sends the address byte back unchanged in the response telegram to the master.

Example:

writing to frequency converter address 22 (16H) with address format 1-31:

						1	
0	0	0	1	0	1	1	0

195NA042.10

Data control byte (BCC)

The data control byte is explained in this example: Before the first byte in the telegram is received, the Calculated CheckSum (BCS) is 0.

						1	
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

95NA043 10

When the first byte (02H) has been received:

BCS = BCC EXOR "first byte"

(EXOR = exclusive-or)

BCS = 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 (00 H)

EXOR

1. byte = 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 (02H) BCC = 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 (02H)

Each subsequent byte gates with BCS EXOR and produces a new BCC, e.g.:

BCS = 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 (02H)

EXOR

2nd byte = 1 1 0 1 0 1 1 0 (D6H) BCC = 1 1 0 1 0 1 0 0 (D4H)



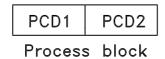
■ Data Character (byte)

The structure of data blocks depends on the type of telegram. There are three types of telegram, and the type of telegram applies for both control telegrams (master ⇒slave) and response telegrams (slave ⇒ master). The three types of telegram are:

 Parameter block, used to transfer parameters between master and slave. The data block is made up of 12 bytes (6 words) and also contains the process block.

				13.	311/10 + 7.10
PKE	IND	PWE high	PWE _{low}	PCD1	PCD2
	Param	ck	Process	block	

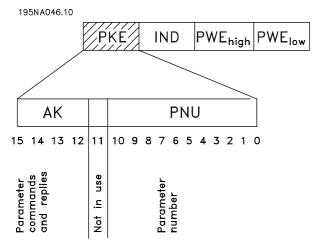
- The process block is made up of a data block of four bytes (2 words) and contains:
 - Control word and reference value
 - Status word and present output frequency (from slave to master)



- Text block, which is used to read or write texts via the data block.

PKE	IND	Ch	1	Ch	2	L	Ch	n	PCD1	PCD2	
			Text block					Proce	ss blo	ck	

Parameter commands and responses (AK)



Bits no. 12-15 are used to transfer parameter commands from master to slave and the slave's processed responses back to the master.

Parameter commands master⇒slave								
Bit	no.							
15	14	13	12	Parameter command				
0	0	0	0	No command				
0	0	0	1	Read parameter value				
0	0	1	0	Write parameter value in RAM				
				(word)				
0	0	1	1	Write parameter value in RAM				
				(double word)				
1	1	0	1	Write parameter value in RAM				
				and EEprom (double word)				
1	1	1	0	Write parameter value in RAM				
				and EEprom (word)				
1	1	1	1	Read/write text				

Res	Response slave⇒master								
Bit no.				Response					
15	14	13	12						
0	0	0	0	No response					
0	0	0	1	Parameter value transferred					
				(word)					
0	0	1	0	Parameter value transferred					
				(double word)					
0	1	1	1	Command cannot be performed					
1	1	1	1	Text transferred					

If the command cannot be performed the slave sends this response: 0111 Command cannot be performed and gives the following fault report in the parameter value (PWE):

Response	Fault report
(0111)	
0	The parameter number used
	does not exist
1	There is no write access to the
	defined parameter
2	Data value exceeds
	the parameter's limits
3	The sub index used
	does not exist
4	The parameter is not the array type
5	The data type does not match the
	defined parameter
17	Data change in the defined para-
	meter is not possible in the
	frequency converter's present
	mode.
	Certain parameters can only be
	changed when the motor is turned
	off
130	There is no bus access to the
	defined parameter
131	Data change is not possible because
	factory Setup is selected



Parameter number (PNU)

Bits no. 0-10 are used to transfer parameter numbers. The relevant parameter's function is defined in the parameter description in the section entitled *Programming*.

Index



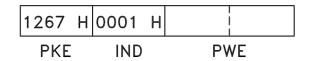
Index is used together with the parameter number to read/write-access parameters that have an index, e.g. parameter 615 *Error code*. The index is made up of 2 bytes, one lowbyte and one highbyte, but only the lowbyte is used as an index.

Example - Index:

The first error code (index [1]) in parameter 615 *Error code* must be read.

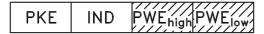
PKE = 1267 Hex (read parameter 615 Error code.)

IND = 0001 Hex - Index no. 1.



The frequency converter will respond in the parameter value block (PWE) with a fault code value from 1 - 99. See *Summary of Warnings* and *Alarms* to identify the fault code.

Parameter value (PWE)



The parameter value block consists of 2 words (4 bytes), and the value depends on the defined command (AK). If the master prompts for a parameter value, the PWE block does not contain a value. If you wish the master to change a parameter value (write), the new value is written in the PWE block and sent to the slave.

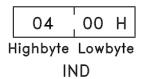
If the slave responds to a parameter request (read command), the present parameter value in the PWE block is transferred and returned to the master. If a parameter contains not a numerical value, but several data options, e.g. parameter 001 Language where [0] corresponds to English,

and [3] corresponds to *Danish*, the data value is selected by entering the value in the PWE block. See *Example - Selecting a data value*.

Via serial communication it is only possible to read parameters that have data type 9 (text string). Parameter 621 - 635 Nameplate data is data type 9. For example, in parameter 621 Unit type it is possible to read the unit size and mains voltage range. When a text string is transferred (read) the length of the telegram is variable, as the texts are of different lengths. The telegram length is defined in the telegram's second byte, known as LGE. To be able to read a text via the PWE block the parameter command (AK) must be set to 'F' Hex.

The index character is used to indicate whether it is a read or write command.

In a read command the index must have the following format:



Some frequency converters have parameters to which a text may be written. To be able to write a text via the PWE block the parameter command (AK) must be set to 'F' Hex.

For a write command the text must have the following format:

> 05 00 H Highbyte Lowbyte IND

Data types supported by frequency converter:

Data types	Description
3	Integer 16
4	Integer 32
5	Unsigned 8
6	Unsigned 16
7	Unsigned 32
9	Text string
10	Byte string
13	Time difference
33	Reserved
35	Bit sequence



Unsigned means that there is no operational sign in the telegram.

Example - Write a parameter value:

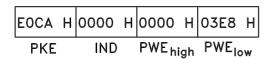
Parameter 202 *Output frequency high limit, f_{MAX}* to be changed to 100 Hz. The value must be recalled after a mains failure, so it is written in EEPROM.

PKE = E0CA Hex - Write for parameter 202 Output frequency high limit, f_{MAX}

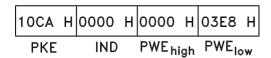
IND = 0000 Hex

 $PWE_{HIGH} = 0000 \text{ Hex}$

 $PWE_{LOW} = 03E8 \text{ Hex}$ - Data value 1000, corresponding to 100 Hz, see conversion.



The response from the slave to the master will be:



Example - Selection of a data value:

You wish to select kg/hour [20] in parameter 416 *Process units*. The value must be recalled after a mains failure, so it is written in EEPROM.

PKE = E19F Hex - Write for parameter 416 *Process units*

IND = 0000 Hex

PWEHIGH = 0000 Hex

PVVE_{HIGH} = 0000 Hex

 $PWE_{LOW} = 0014 \text{ Hex}$ - Select data option kg/hour [20]

E1AO	Н	0000	Н	0000	Н	0014	Н
PKE		IND		PWE _{hi}	gh	PWElc	w

The response from the slave to the master will be:

11AO	Н	0000	Н	0000	Н	0014	Н
PKE		IND		PWE _h	igh	PWEIC	

Example - Reading a parameter value:

The value in parameter 207 Ramp up time 1 is required.

The master sends the following request:

PKE = 10CF Hex - read parameter 207

Ramp up time 1

IND = 0000 Hex

 $PWE_{HIGH} = 0000 Hex$

 $PWE_{LOW} = 0000 \text{ Hex}$

10CF	Н	0000	Н	0000	Н	0000	Н
PKE		IND		PWE _{hi}	gh	PWElc	w

If the value in parameter 207 *Ramp-up time 1* is 10 sec., the response from the slave to the master will be:

10CF	Н	0000	Н	0000	Н	000A	Н
PKE		IND		PWE _{hi}	igh	PWElc	w

Conversion:

Under the section entitled *Factory Settings* the various attributes of each parameter are displayed. As a parameter value can only be transferred as a whole number, a conversion factor must be used to transfer decimals.

Example:

Parameter 201 Output frequency, low limit f_{MIN} has a conversion factor of 0.1. If you wish to preset the minimum frequency to 10 Hz, the value 100 must be transferred, as a conversion factor of 0.1 means that the value transferred is multiplied by 0.1. The value 100 will thus be perceived as 10.0.

Conversion table	
Conversion	Conversion
index	factor
74	0.1
2	100
1	10
0	1
-1	0.1
-2	0.01
-3	0.001
-4	0.0001
-5	0.00001



■ Process Words

(slave⇒master)

The block of process words is divided into two blocks of 16 bits, which always occur in the defined sequence.

DODO

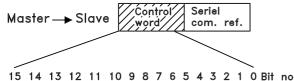
frequency

<u></u>		<u>-</u>
	PCD 1	PCD 2
Control telegram	Control word	Reference-
(master⇒slave)		value
Control telegram	Status word	Present outp.

■ Control Word According to FC Profile

To select *FC protocol* in the control word, parameter 512 *Telegram Profile* must be set to *FC protocol* [1].

The control word is used to send commands from a master (e.g. a PC) to a slave (frequency converter).



15	14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7	6 5 4 3 2 1 0 Bit no.	
Bit	Bit = 0	Bit =1	
00	Preset reference		
	choise Isb		
01	Preset reference		
	choise msb		
02	DC brake	Ramp	
03	Coasting	Enable	
04	Quick stop	Ramp	
05	Freeze output	Ramp enable	
06	Ramp stop	Start	
07	No function	Reset	
80	No function	Jog	
09	Ramp 1	Ramp 2	
10	Data not valid	Valid	
11	No function	Relay 01 activated	
12	No function	Relay 04 activated	
13	Choice of Setup (Isb)		
14	Choice of Setup		
	(msb)		
15	No function	Reversing	

Bit 00/01:

Bit 00/01 is used to select between the two pre-programmed references (parameters 215-218 *Preset reference*) according to the following table:

Preset ref.	Parameter	Bit 01	Bit 00
1	215	0	0
2	216	0	1
3	217	1	0
4	218	1	1

NB!:

In parameter 508 Selection of preset reference a selection is made to define how Bit 00/01 gates with the corresponding

function on the digital inputs.

Bit 02, DC brake:

Bit 02 = '0' leads to DC braking and stop. Braking current and duration are set in parameters 125 and 126. Bit 02 = '1' leads to ramping.

Bit 03, Coasting stop:

Bit 03 = '0' causes the frequency converter to immediately "let go" of the motor (the output transistors are "shut off"), so that it coasts to a standstill. Bit 03 = '1' causes the frequency converter to be able start the motor if the other starting conditions have been fulfilled. Note: In parameter 502 *Coasting stop* a selection is made to define how Bit 03 gates with the corresponding function on a digital input.

Bit 04, Quick stop:

Bit 04 = '0' causes a stop, in which the motor's speed is ramped down to stop via parameter 212 Quick stop ramp-down time.

Bit 05, Freeze output frequency:

Bit 05 = '0' causes the present output frequency (in Hz) to freeze. The frozen output frequency can now only be changed by means of the digital inputs programmed to *Speed up* and *Speed down*.

NB!:

If Freeze output is active, the frequency converter cannot be stopped via Bit 06 Start or via a digital input. The frequency converter can only be stopped by the following:

- Bit 03 Coasting stop
- Bit 02 DC braking
- Digital input programmed to *DC braking*, *Coasting* stop or *Reset and coasting stop*.

Bit 06, Ramp stop/start:

Bit 06 = '0' causes a stop, in which the motor's speed is ramped down to stop via the selected *ramp down* parameter.

Bit 06 = '1' causes the frequency converter to be able to start the motor, if the other starting conditions have been fulfilled. Note: In parameter 505 Start a selection



is made to define how Bit 06 Ramp stop/start gates with the corresponding function on a digital input.

Bit 07, Reset:

Bit 07 = '0' does not cause a reset.

Bit 07 = '1' causes the reset of a trip. Reset is activated on the signal's leading edge, i.e. when changing from logic '0' to logic '1'.

Bit 08, Jog:

Bit 08 = '1' causes the output frequency to be determined by parameter 213 *Jog frequency*.

Bit 09, Selection of ramp 1/2:

Bit 09 = "0" means that ramp 1 is active (parameters 207/208). Bit 09 = "1" means that ramp 2 (parameters 209/210) is active.

Bit 10, Data not valid/Data valid:

Is used to tell the frequency converter whether the control word is to be used or ignored. Bit 10 = '0' causes the control word to be ignored, Bit 10 = '1' causes the control word to be used. This function is relevant, because the control word is always contained in the telegram, regardless of which type of telegram is used, i.e. it is possible to turn off the control word if you do not wish to use it in connection with updating or reading parameters.

Bit 11, Relay 01:

Bit 11 = "0" Relay not activated.

Bit 11 = "1" Relay 01 activated, provided *Control* word bit has been chosen in parameter 323.

Bit 12, Relay 04:

Bit 12 = "0" Relay 04 has not been activated.

Bit 12 = "1" Relay 04 has been activated, provided *Control word bit* has been chosen in parameter 326.

Bit 13/14, Selection of Setup:

Bits 13 and 14 are used to choose from the four menu Setups according to the following table:

Setup	Bit 14	Bit 13
1	0	0
2	0	1
3	1	0
4	1	1

The function is only possible when *Multi-Setups* is selected in parameter 004 *Active Setup*. Note: I parameter 507 *Selection of Setup* a selection is made to define how Bit 13/14 gates with the corresponding function on the digital inputs.

Bit 15 Reversing:

Bit 15 = '0' causes no reversing.

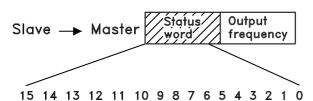
Bit 15 = '1' causes reversing.

Note: In the factory setting reversing is set to digital in parameter 506 Reversing. Bit 15 only causes reversing when either Ser. communication

, Logic or or Logic and is selected.



■ Status Word according to FC Profile



The status word is used to inform the master (e.g. a PC) of the slave's (frequency converter) mode. Slave⇒Master.

Bit	Bit = 0	Bit =1
00	Control not ready	Ready
01	VLT not ready	Ready
02	Coasting	Enable
03	No fault	Trip
04	Reserved	
05	Reserved	
06	Reserved	
07	No warning	Warning
80	Speed ≠ ref.	Speed = ref.
09	Local control	Bus control
10	Out of range	Frequency OK
11	Not running	Running
12	Brake test OK	Brake test failed
13	Voltage OK	Above limit
14	Torque OK	Above limit
15		Thermal warning

Bit 00, Control not ready/ready:

Bit 00 = '0' means that the frequency converter has tripped.

Bit 00 = '1' means that the frequency converter controls are ready, but that the power component is not necessarily receiving any power supply (in case of external 24 V supply to controls).

Bit 01, Drive ready:

Bit 01 = '1'. The frequency converter is ready for operation, but there is an active coasting command via the digital inputs or via serial communication.

Bit 02, Coasting stop:

Bit 02 = 0. The frequency converter has released the motor.

Bit 02 = '1'. The frequency converter can start the motor when a start command is given.

Bit 03, No trip/trip:

Bit 03 = 0 means that the frequency converter is not in fault mode.

Bit 03 = '1' means that the frequency converter is tripped, and that it needs a reset signal for operation to be reestablished.



Bit 04, Not used:

Bit 04 is not used in the status word.

Bit 05, Not used:

Bit 05 is not used in the status word.

Bit 06, Not used:

Bit 06 is not used in the status word.

Bit 07, No warning/warning:

Bit 07 = '0' means that there are no warnings.

Bit 07 = '1' means that a warning has occurred.

Bit 08, Speed≠ ref/speed = ref.:

Bit 08 = '0' means that the motor is running, but that the present speed is different from the preset speed reference. It might, for example, be the case while the speed is being ramped up/down during start/stop. Bit 08 = '1' means that the motor's present speed

is the same as the preset speed reference.

Bit 09, Local operation/serial communication control:

Bit 09 = '0' means that [STOP/RESET] is activated on the control unit, or that *Local control* in parameter 002 *Local/remote operation* is selected. It is not possible to control the frequency converter via serial communication.

Bit 09 = '1' means that it is possible to control the frequency converter via serial communication.

Bit 10, Outside frequency range:

Bit 10 = '0', if the output frequency has reached the value in parameter 201 *Output frequency low limit* or parameter 202 *Output frequency high limit*. Bit 10 = "1" means that the output frequency is within the defined limits.

Bit 11, Running/not running:

Bit 11 = '0' means that the motor is not running.

Bit 11 = '1' means that the frequency converter has a start signal or that the output frequency is greater than 0 Hz.

Bit 12, Brake test:

Bit 12 = '0' means brake test OK.

Bit 12 = '1' means brake test failed.

Bit 13, Voltage warning high/low:

Bit 13 = 0 means that there are no voltage warnings.

Bit 13 = '1' means that the DC voltage in the frequency converter's intermediate circuit is too low or too high.

Bit 14, Torque OK/ above limit:

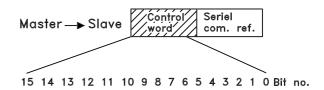
Bit 14 = '0' means that the motor current is lower than the torque limit selected in parameter 221.

Bit 14 = '1' means that the the torque limit in parameter 221 has been exceeded.

Bit 15, Thermal warning:

Bit 15 = '0' means that there is no thermal warning. Bit 15 = '1' means that the temperature limit has been exceeded either in the motor, in the frequency converter, or from a thermistor connected to an analog input.

■ Control word according to Fieldbus Profile



To select *Profidrive* in the control word, parameter 512 *Telegram Profile* must be set to *Profidrive* [0].

The control word is used to send commands from a master (e.g. a PC) to a slave (frequency converter). Master⇒Slave.

Bit	Bit = 0	Bit =1
00	OFF 1	ON 1
01	OFF 2	ON 2
02	OFF 3	ON 3
03	Coasting stop	
04	Quick stop	
05	Freeze outp. freq.	
06	Ramp stop	Start
07		Reset
08		Bus jog 1
09		Bus jog 2
10	Data not valid	Data not valid
11		Slow down
12		Catch-up
13	Select Setup (Isb)	
14	Select Setup (msb)	
15		Reversing

Bit 00-01-02, OFF1-2-3/ON1-2-3:

Bit 00-01-02 = '0' causes ramp stop, which uses the ramp time in parameters 207/208 or 209/210.



If Relay 123 is selected in parameter 323 Relay output, the output relay will be activated when the output frequency is 0 Hz.

Bit 00-01-02 = '1' means that the frequency converter can start the motor if the other starting conditions are fulfilled.

Bit 03, Coasting stop:

See description under Control word according to FC protocol.

Bit 04, Quick stop:

See description under Control word according to FC protocol.

Bit 05, Freeze output frequency:

See description under Control word according to FC protocol.

Bit 06, Ramp stop/start:

See description under Control word according to FC protocol.

Bit 07, Reset:

See description under Control word according to FC protocol.

Bit 08, Jog 1:

Bit 08 = "1" means that the output frequency is determined by parameter $09 \ Bus \ jog \ 1$.

Bit 09, Jog 2:

Bit 09 = "1" means that the output frequency is determined by parameter 510 Bus jog 2.

Bit 10. Data not valid/Data valid:

See description under Control word according to FC protocol.

Bit 11, Slow-down:

Used to reduce the speed reference by the value in parameter 219 *Catch-up/slow-down reference*. Bit 11 = '0' does not cause any change to the reference.

Bit 11 = '1' means that the reference is reduced.

Bit 12, Catch-up:

Used to increase the speed reference by the value in parameter 219 *Catch-up/slow-down reference*. Bit 12 = '0' does not cause any change to the reference. Bit 12 = '1' means that the reference is increased. If both *Slow down* and *Catch-up* are activated (Bits 11 and 12 = "1"), slow down has the highest priority, i.e. that the speed reference is reduced.

Bit 13/14, Selection of Setup:

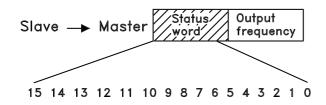
See description under Control word according to FC protocol.

Bit 15 Reversing:

See description under Control word according to FC protocol.



■ Status word according to Fieldbus Profile



The status word is used to inform the master (e.g. a PC) of the slave's (frequency converter) mode. Slave⇒Master.

Bit	Bit = 0	Bit =1
00		Control ready
01		Drive ready
02	Coasting stop	
03	No trip	Trip
04	ON 2	OFF 2
05	ON 3	OFF 3
06	Start enable	Start disable
07		Warning
08	Speed ≠ ref.	Speed = ref.
09	Local control	Ser. communi.
10	Outside frequency range	Frequency limit OK
11		Motor running
12		
13		Voltage warn.
14		Current limit
15		Thermal warn.

Bit 00, Control not ready/ready:

Bit 00 = '0' means that the Bit 00, 01 or 02 in the control word are '0' (OFF1, OFF2 or OFF3) or the frequency converter is not ready for operation. Bit 00 = '1' means that the frequency converter is ready for operation.

Bit 01, Drive ready:

See description under Status word according to FC protocol.

Bit 02, Coasting stop:

Bit 02 = '0' means that Bits 00, 02 or 03 in the control word are "0" (OFF1, OFF3 or Coasting stop).

Bit 02 = '1' means that Bits 00, 01, 02 and 03 in the control word are "1", and that the frequency converter has not tripped.

Bit 03, No trip/trip:

See description under Status word according to FC protocol.

Bit 04, ON 2/OFF 2:

Bit 04 = '0' means that Bit 01 in the control word = '1'. Bit 04 = '1' means that Bit 01 in the control word = '0'.

Bit 05, ON 3/OFF 3:

Bit 05 = '0' means that Bit 02 in the control word = '1'. Bit 05 = '1' means that Bit 02 in the control word = '0'.

Bit 06, Start enable/start disable:

Bit 06 = '1' after reset of a trip, after activation of OFF2 or OFF3 and after connection of mains voltage. *Start disable* is reset by setting Bit 00 in the control word to '0', and Bit 01, 02 and 10 are set to '1'.

Bit 07, Warning:

See description under Status word according to FC protocol.

Bit 08, Speed:

See description under Status word according to FC protocol.

Bit 09, No warning/warning:

See description under Status word according to FC protocol.

Bit 10, Speed ≠ ref/speed = ref.:

See description under Status word according to FC protocol.

Bit 11, Running/not running:

See description under Status word according to FC protocol.

Bit 13, Voltage warning high/low:

See description under Status word according to FC protocol.

Bit 14, Current limit:

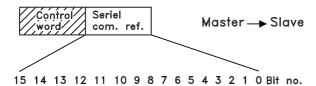
See description under Status word according to FC protocol.

Bit 15, Thermal warning:

See description under Status word according to FC protocol.



■ Serial communication reference



The serial communication reference is transferred to the frequency converter as a 16-bit word. The value is transferred in whole numbers 0 - ±32767 (±200%). 16384 (4000 Hex) corresponds to 100%.

The serial communication reference has the following format: 0-16384 (4000 Hex) \cong 0-100% (Par. 204 *Minimum ref.* - Par. 205 *Maximum ref.*).

It is possible to change the direction of rotation via the serial reference. This is done by converting the binary reference value to 2' complement. See example.

Example - Control word and serial communication ref.:

The frequency converter is to receive a start command and the reference is to be set to 50% (2000 Hex) of the reference range.

Control word = 047F Hex \Rightarrow Start command. Reference = 2000 Hex \Rightarrow 50% reference.



The frequency converter is to receive a start command and the reference is to be set to -50% (-2000 Hex) of the reference range.

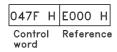
The reference value is first converted to 1' complement, and then 1 is added binarily to obtain 2' complement:

2000 Hex	0010	0000	0000	0000	0000
1' complement	1101	1111	1111	1111	1111
					+ 1

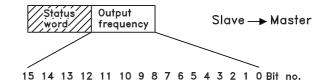
1110 0000 0000 0000 0000

Control word = 047F Hex \Rightarrow Start command. Reference = E000 Hex \Rightarrow -50% reference.

2' complement



■ Present output frequency



The value of the frequency converter's present output frequency is transferred as a 16-bit word. The value is transferred as whole numbers $0 - \pm 32767 (\pm 200\%)$. 16384 (4000 Hex) corresponds to 100%.

Output frequency has the following format: 0-16384 (4000 Hex) \cong 0-100% (Par. 201 Output frequency low limit - Par. 202 Output frequency high limit).

Example - Status word and current output frequency: The master receives a status message from the frequency converter that the current output frequency is 50% of the output frequency range.

Par. 201 Output frequency low limit = 0 Hz Par. 202 Output frequency high limit = 50 Hz

Status word = 0F03 Hex.

Output frequency = 2000 Hex \Rightarrow 50% of the frequency range, corresponding to 25 Hz.

0F03	Н	2000 H	
Status word		Output frequency	,



■ Telegram example

Telegram to the frequency converter:

■ Example 1: For Controlling the Drive and Reading Parameters

This telegram reads parameter 520, motor current.

stx	lge	adr	pke		ind		pwe,	high	pwe,	low	pcd 1		pcd 2)	bcc
02	0E	01	12	08	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	17

All numbers are in hex format.

The response from the frequency converter will correspond to the command above, but *pwe,high* and *pwe,low* will contain the actual value of parameter

520 multiplied by 100. This means that if the actual output current is 5.24 A then the value coming from the frequency converter is 524.

Response from the frequency converter:

S	tx	lge	adr	pke		ind		pwe,	high	pwe,	low	pcd 1		pcd 2)	bcc
0		0E	01	22	08	00	00	00	00	02	0C	06	07	00	00	28

All numbers are in hex format.

Pcd 1 and pcd 2 from example 2 can be used and added to the example which means that

it will be possible to control the drive and read the current at the same time.

■ Example 2: Only for Controlling the Drive

This telegram sets the control word to 047C Hex (Start command) with a speed reference of 2000 Hex (50%).



NB!:

Parameter 512 is set to FC Drive.

Telegram to the frequency converter:

stx	lge	adr	pcd 1		pcd 2	bcc	
02	06	04	04	7C	20	00	58

All numbers are in hex format.

The response from the frequency converter gives information of the status of the drive when it received the command. By sending the command again, the *pcd1* will change to the new status.

Response from the frequency converter:

stx	lge	adr	pcd 1		pcd 2	bcc	
02	06	04	06	07	00	00	01

All numbers are in hex format.

■ Read parameter description elements

With Read Parameter Description Elements it is possible to read the characteristics of a parameter which could be eg. Name, Default value, conversion, etc.

The table below shows the available parameter description elements:

Index	Description
1	Basic characteristics
2	No of elements (array types)
4	Unit of measure
6	Name
7	Lower limit
8	Upper limit
20	Default value
21	Additional characteristics

In the following example Read Parameter Description Elements is chosen on parameter 001, Language, and the requested element is index 1 Basic characteristics.

Basis characteristics (index 1):

The Basic characteristics command is split up in two parts representing basic behaviour and datatype. The Basic characteristics return a 16 bit value to the master in PWELOW.

The basic behaviour indicates whether eg. text is available or the parameter is an array as single bit information in the high byte of PWE_{LOW}.

The datatype part indicates if a parameter is signed 16, unsigned 32 in the low byte of PWE_{LOW}.



PWE high basic behaviour:

Bit	Description
15	Active parameter
14	Array
13	Parameter value can only be reset
12	Parameter value different from factory setting
11	Text available
10	Additional text available
9	Read only
8	Upper and lower limit not relevant
0-7	Data type

Active parameter is only active when communicating through Profibus.

Array means that the parameter is an array. If bit 13 is true, the parameter can only be reset, not written to.

If bit 12 is true, the parameter value is different from the factory setting.

Bit 11 indicates that text is available.

Bit 10 indicates that additional text is available. Eg. parameter 001, *Language*, contains text for index field 0, *English*, and for index field 1, *German*.

If bit 9 is true, the parameter value is read-only and cannot be changed.

If bit 8 is true, upper and lower limits of the parameter value are not relevant.

PWE_{LOW} datatype

Dec.	Datatype
3	Signed 16
4	Signed 32
5	Unsigned 8
6	Unsigned 16
7	Unsigned 32
9	Visible string
10	Byte string
13	Time difference
33	Reserved
35	Bit sequence

Example

In this example, the master reads the Basic characteristics of parameter 001, Language.

The following telegram must be sent to the frequency converter:

STX	LGE	ADR	PKE	IND	PWE _{HIGH}	PWE LOW	PCD1	PCD2	BCC
02	0E	01	40 01	00 01	00 00	00 00	XX XX	XX XX	XX

STX = 02 Start byte

LGE = 0E Length of remaining telegram

ADR = Sends the frequency converter on

Address 1, Danfoss format

PKE = 4001; 4 in the PKE field indicates a Read Parameter Description and

01 indicates parameter number

001, Language

IND = 0001; 1 indicates that *Basic* characteristics are required.

The response from the frequency converter will be:

STX	LGE	ADR	PKE	IND	PWE _{HIGH}	PWE_{LOW}	PCD1	PCD2	BCC
02	0E	01	30 01	00 01	00 00	04 05	XX XX	XX XX	XX

PKE = 02 Start byte IND = 0001; 1

indicates that Basic characteristics

are sent

PWE_{LOW} = 0405; 04 indicates that Basic

behaviour as bit 10 corresponds to *Additional text*. 05 is the datatype which corresponds to *Unsigned* 8.

No of elements (index 2):

This function indicates the Number of elements (array) of a parameter. The answer to the master will be in PWE_{LOW}.

Conversion and Unit of measurement (index 4):

The Conversion and unit of measurement command indicates the conversion of a parameter and the unit of measurement. The answer to the master will be in PWE_{LOW}. The conversion index will be in the high



byte of PWE_{LOW} and the unit index will be in the low byte of PWE_{LOW}. Note that conversion index is signed 8 and unit index is unsigned 8, see tables below.

The unit index defines the "Unit of measure". The conversion index defines how the value should be scaled to get the basic representation of the "Unit of measure". Basic representation is where conversion index equals "0".

Example:

A parameter has a "unit index" of 9 and a "conversion index" of 2. The raw (integer) value read is 23. This means that we have a parameter of the unit "Power" and the raw value should be multiplied by 10 to the power of 2 and the unit is W. $23 \times 10^2 = 2300 \text{ W}$

Table for conversion and unit of measurement

Unit	Unit of	Designation	Conver-
index	measure		sion index
0	Dimension		0
	less		
4	Time	S	0
		h	74
8	Energy	j	0
		kWh	
9	Power	W	0
		kW	3
11	Speed	1/s	0
		1/min (RPM)	67
16	Torque	Nm	0
17	Temperature	K	0
		°C	100
21	Voltage	V	0
22	Current	А	0
24	Ratio	%	0
27	Relative	%	0
	change		
28	Frequency	Hz	0

Conversion index	Conversion factor
0	1
1	10
2	100
3	1000
-1	0.1
-2	0.01
-3	0.001
67	1/60
74	3600
75	3600000
100	1



Name (index 6):

The Name returns a string value in ASCII format, containing the name of the parameter.

Example:

In this example the master reads the name of parameter 001, *Language*.

The following telegram must be sent to the frequency converter:

STX	LGE	ADR	PKE	IND	PWE _{HIGH}	PWE LOW	PCD1	PCD2	BCC
02	0E	01	40 01	00 06	00 00	00 00	XX XX	XX XX	XX

STX = 02 Start byte

LGE = 0E Length of remaining telegram ADR = Sends the frequency converter on

Address 1, Danfoss format

PKE = 4001; 4 in the PKE field indicates

a Read Parameter Description and 01 indicates parameter number

001, Language

IND = 0006; 6 indicates that *Names* is

required.

The response from the frequency converter will be:

STX	LGE	ADR	PKE	IND	PVA	PCD1	PCD2	BCC
02	12	01	30 01	00 06	4C41 4E47 5541	XXXX	XXXX	XX
					4745			

PKE = 3001; 3 are the response for *Name*

and 01 indicates the parameter

number 001, Language

IND = 00 06; 06 indicates that *Name* is

sent.

PVA = 4C 41 4E 47 55 41 47 45

LANGUAGE

The parameter value channel is now set up to a visible string which returns an ASCII character for each letter in the parameter name.

Lower limit (index 7):

The Lower limit returns the minimum allowed value of a parameter. The data type of Lower limit is the same as for the parameter itself.

Upper limit (index 8):

The Upper limit returns the maximum allowed value of a parameter. The data type of Upper limit is the same is for the parameter itself.

Default value (index 20):

The Default value returns the default value of a parameter, which is the factory setting. The data type of Default value is the same as for the parameter itself.

Additional characteristics (index 21):

The command can be used for getting some additional information on a parameter, eg. *No bus Access, Power Unit dependency, etc.*. The Additional characteristics

returns an answer in PWE_{LOW} . If a bit is logic '1', the condition is true according to the table below:

Bit	Description
0	Special Default Value
1	Special Upper Limit
2	Special Lower Limit
7	LCP Access LSB
8	LCP Access MSB
9	NoBusAccess
10	Std Bus Read Only
11	Profibus Read Only
13	ChangeRunning
15	PowerUnitDependency

If one of bit 0 Special Default Value, bit 1 Special Upper Limit and bit 2 Special Lower Limit are true, the parameter has power unit depending values.

Bit 7 and 8 indicates the attributes for the LCP access, see table.

Bit 8	Bit 7	Description
0	0	No access
0	1	Read only
1	0	Read/write
1	1	Write with lock

Bit 9 indicates No bus Access.

Bits 10 and 11 indicates that this parameter can only be read over the bus.



If bit 13 is true, the parameter cannot be changed while running.

If bit 15 is true, the parameter is depending on the power unit.



■ Additional Text

With this feature it is possible to read additional text if bit 10, *Additional text available*, is true in Basic characteristics.

To read out additional text, the parameter command (PKE) must be set to F hex, see *Databytes*.

The index-field is used for pointing out which element to be read. Valid indexes are in the

range of 1 through 254. The index must be calculated after the following equation: Index = Parameter value + 1 (see table below).

Value	Index	Text
0	1	English
1	2	Deutsch
2	3	Français
3	4	Dansk
4	5	Espanol
5	6	Italiano

Example:

IGF =

In this example, the Master reads additional text in parameter 001, Language. The telegram is

set up to read datavalue [0] which corresponds to *English*. The following telegram must be sent to the VLT frequency converter:

STX	LGE	ADR	PKE	IND	PWEHIGH	PWE_{LOW}	PCD1	PCD2	BCC
02	0E	01	F0 01	00 01	00 00	00 00	XX XX	XX XX	XX

STX = 02 Start byte

OE Length of the remaining

telegram

ADR = Send the VLT frequency converter

on Address 1, Danfoss format

PKE = F001; F in the PKE field indicates

a Read text and 01 indicates

parameter number 001, Language.

IND = 0001; 1 indicates that text to

parameter value [0] is required

The response	from the	: VIT frequen	icv converter	will be:

STX	LGE	ADR	PKE	IND	PVA	PCD1	PCD2	BCC
02	11	01	F0 01	00 01	454E 474C 4953 48	XX XX	XX XX	XX

PKE = F001; F is the response for

Text transfer and 01 indicates

parameter number 001, Language.

IND = 0001; 1 indicates that index [1] is

sent

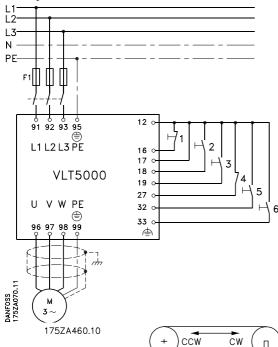
PVA = 45 4E 47 4C 49 53 48

ENGLISH

The parameter value channel is now set up to a visible string, which returns an ASCII character for each letter in the index name.



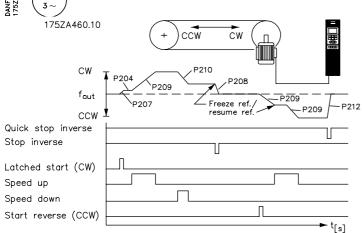
■ Conveyor belt



A conveyor belt is to be controlled using the digital inputs. Start the conveyor belt going to the right (clockwise) via switch 2 and to the left (anti-clockwise) via switch 3. The reference will increase as long as switch 5 (speed up) is active and will be reduced when switch 6 (speed down) is active.

A stop via the ramp can be activated by means of contact 1; quick-stop by means of switch 4.

- 1. Pulse stop (inverse)
- 2. Pulse start to the right
- 3. Pulse start to the left
- 4. Quick-stop
- 5. Speed up
- 6. Speed down



The following must be programmed in order shown:

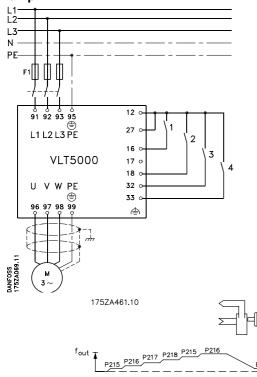
Function:	Parameter:	Setting:	Data value:
Rotation, frequency/direction	200	Both directions, 0-132 Hz	[1]
Minimum reference	204	3-10 (Hz)	
Ramp-up time 1	207	10-20 sec.	
Ramp-down time 1	208	10-20 sec.	
Ramp-up time 2	209	10-20 sec.	
Ramp-down time 2	210	10-20 sec.	
Digital input, term. 16	300	Stop (inverse)	[2]
Digital input, term. 17	301	Freeze reference	[7]
Digital input, term. 18	302	Pulse start	[2]
Digital input, term. 19	303	Start reversing	[2]
Digital input, term. 27	304	Quick-stop (inverse)	[2]

All other settings are based on factory settings. However, motor data (nameplate data) must always be entered in parameters 102-106.



■ Pump

Start/stop Preset ref. Isb Preset ref. msb Change setup, Isb



A pump is to run at six different speeds, determined by shifting between the preset references.

9	Switch	no.:	
1	3	4	
0	0	0	Preset reference 1
0	0	1	Preset reference 2
0	1	0	Preset reference 3
0	1	1	Preset reference 4
1	0	0	Preset reference 5
1	0	1	Preset reference 6

When switch 1 is active, a setup change to setup 2 is made.

Start/stop by means of switch 2

- 1. Choice of Setup, Isb
- 2. Start/stop
- 3. Preset reference, Isb
- 4. Preset reference, msb

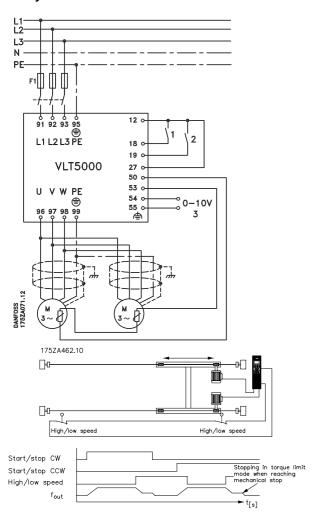
The following must be programmed in order shown:

Function:	Parameter:	Setting:	Data value:
Active Setup	004	Multi-Šetup	[5]
Digital input, term. 16	300	Choice of Setup, Isb	[10]
Digital input, term. 32	306	Preset reference, Isb	[6]
Digital input, term. 33	307	Preset reference, msb	[6]
Setup copying	006	Copy to Setup 2 from #	[2]
Edit Setup	005	Setup 1	[1]
Maximum reference	205	60	
Preset reference 1	215	10%	
Preset reference 2	216	20%	
Preset reference 3	217	30%	
Preset reference 4	218	40%	
Edit Setup	005	Setup 2	[2]
Maximum reference	205	60	
Preset reference 5	215	70%	<u> </u>
Preset reference 6	216	100%	

All other settings are based on factory settings. However, motor data (nameplate data) must always be entered in parameters 102-106.



■ Gantry Crane



A portal gantry with two identical motors is controlled by an external 0-10 Volt signal. The direction of rotation (right or left) is controlled by means of switch 2, while start/stop is carried out using switch 1.

- 1. Start
- 2. Reversing
- 3. Speed reference signal

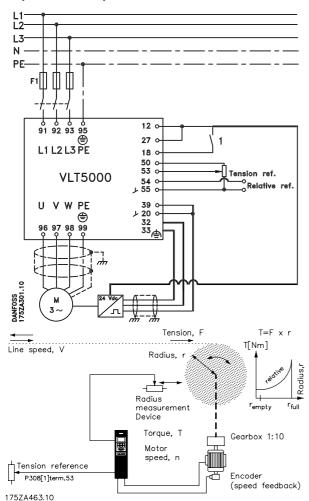
The following must be programmed in order shown:

Function:	Parameter:	Setting:	Data value:
Torque characteristics	101	Normal/special motor character	[15]
Rotation, frequency/direction	200	Both directions, 0 - 132 Hz	[1]
Analogue input, term. 53	308	Thermistor	[4]
Motor thermal protection	128	Thermistor warning/Thermistor trip	[1] or [2]
Analogue input, term. 54	311	Reference	[1]
Terminal 18, digital input	302	Start	[1]
Terminal 27, digital input	304	Coasting stop inverse	[0]
Terminal 42, output	319	Torque limit and stop	[27]

All other settings are based on factory settings. However, motor data (nameplate data) must always be entered in parameters 102-106.



■ Torque control, speed feedback



A winder winds material onto a roll or unwinds material from a roll at a constant tension.

A device measures the radius of the roll and adjusts the motor torque to ensure that the tension is constant. The measuring device must have a non-linear output signal.

The following must be programmed in order shown:

Function:	Parameter:	Setting:	Data value:
Configuration	100	Torque control, speed feedback[5]	
Rotation, frequency/direction	200	Both directions, 0-132 Hz [1]	
Reference/feedback range	203	-Max +Max.	[1]
Minimum reference	204	Set to min. torque (Nm)	
Maximum reference	205	Set to max. torque (Nm)	
Reference function	214	Relative	[1]
Terminal 32, encoder input A	306	Encoder feedback, input A	[25]
Terminal 33, encoder input B	307	Encoder feedback, input B	[24]
Encoder feedback, pulses/rev.	329	Set to encoder pulses per rev.	
Terminal 53, analogue input	308	Reference	[1]
Terminal 54, analogue input	311	Relative reference	[4]
Speed PID lowpass filter	421	10 msec.	



■ VLT 5000 controllers

VLT 5000 has three inbuilt controllers: one for speed control, one for process control and one for torque control.

Speed control and process control are in the form of a PID controller that requires a feedback to an input. Torque control is in the form of a PI controller that does not require a feedback, since the torque is calculated by the VLT frequency converter on the basis of the current measured.

Setting of speed and process controller

With respect to both PID controllers, there are a number of settings which are made in the same parameters; however, the choice of controller type will affect the choices to be made under the common parameters. In parameter 100 *Configuration*, a choice is made of controller, *Speed control, closed loop* or *Process control, closed loop*.

Feedback signal:

A feedback range must be set for both controllers. This feedback range at the same time limits the possible reference range, which means that if the sum of all references is outside the feedback range, the reference will be limited to being within this range. The feedback range is set in the units that belong to the application (Hz, RPM, bar, °C, etc.). Setting is effected directly in a parameter for the individual input terminal, thereby deciding whether it should be used for feedback in connection with one of the controllers. Inputs that are not used can be disabled, which will ensure that they do not disturb control. If feedback has been selected on two terminals at the same time, these two signals will be added up.

Reference:

For both controllers, it is possible to set four preset references. These can be set between -100% and +100% of the maximum reference or the sum of the external references. External references can be analogue signals, pulse signals and/or serial communication.

All references will be added and the sum will be the reference for subsequent regulation.

It is possible to limit the reference range to a range <u>smaller</u> than the feedback range. This can be an advantage if it is to be avoided that an unintended change of an external reference makes the sum of references move too far away from the optimum reference. As with the feedback range, the reference range is set in the units that belong to the applications in question.

Speed control:

This PID control has been optimized for use in applications with a need to maintain a given motor speed.

The parameters that are specific to the speed controller are parameters 417 to 421.

PID for process control:

This PID control has been optimized for process control. This controller does not have a feedforward facility, but a number of special features that are relevant to process control.

There is a choice of whether normal control is required, in which the speed is increased in the case of an error between the reference and the feedback, or whether inverse control is to be applied, in which the speed is reduced in the case of an error. There is also a choice of whether the integrator is to continue integrating in the case of an error, even if VLT 5000 is at the minimum/maximum frequency or at the current limit. If VLT 5000 is in such a borderline situation, any attempt to change the motor speed will be restricted by this limit. The integrator comes from the works preset to stop integrating. Integration will be adjusted to a gain that corresponds to the given output frequency. In certain applications, it is either difficult or completely impossible to measure such a factor as the level. In such cases, it can be necessary to allow the integrator to continue integrating on the fault, even if the motor speed cannot be changed. This will make the integrator work as a kind of counter, i.e. once the feedback indicates that the speed must be changed in a direction away from the borderline situation, the integration will give this change a delay that depends on the time for which the integrator has overcompensated for the previous error.

Furthermore, it is possible to program a starting frequency in which VLT 5000 will wait without activating the controller until this frequency has been reached. This makes it possible, for example, to quickly build up the necessary static pressure in a pumping system.



PID process control, continued:

The Proportional gain, Integration time and Differentiation time of the process controller are set in individual parameters, and the setting ranges are adapted to process control requirements.

As in speed control, it is possible to limit the influence of the differentiator in relation to swift changes in the error between the reference and the feedback signal.

Also available is a lowpass filter for the process controller. This can be set to remove a much greater share of the feedback signal oscillations than the lowpass filter of the speed controller does. This is because most fans and pump applications react relatively slowly, which is why it can be an advantage to feed as stable a signal as possible to the process controller.

The parameters that are specific to the process controller are parameters 437 to 444.

Setting of torque controller (open loop):

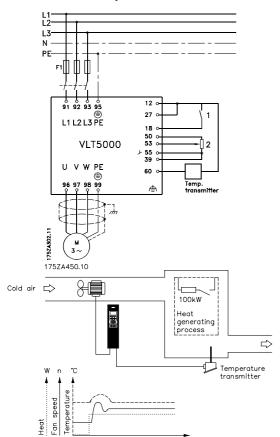
This control is selected if *Torque control, open loop* has been selected in 100 *Configuration*. When this mode has been selected, the reference will use the Nm unit.

Control is in the form of a PI that requires no feedback, since the torque is calculated on the basis of the current measurement of VLT 5000. The proportional gain is set as a percentage in parameter 433 *Torque proportional gain* and the integration time is set in parameter 434 *Torque integration time*. However, both these have been set at the works and normally require no modification.



■ PID for process control

The following is an example of a process controller used in a ventilation system.



In a ventilation system, the temperature is to be settable from - 5 - 35°C with a potentiometer of 0-10 Volt. The set temperature must be kept constant, for which purpose the integrated process controller is to be used. The control is of the inverse type, which means that when the temperature increases, the ventilation speed is increased as well, so as to generate more air. When the temperature drops, the speed is reduced. The transmitter used is a temperature sensor with a working range of -10-40°C, 4-20 mA. Min./Max. speed 10/50 Hz.



NB!:

The example shows a two-wire transmitter.

- 1. Start/Stop
- 2. Temperature reference -5-35°C, 0-10 V (setpoint)
- 3. Temperature transmitter -10-40°C, 4-20 mA (feedback).

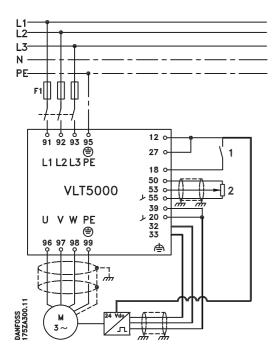
The following must be programmed in order shown - see explanation of settings in the Operating Instructions:

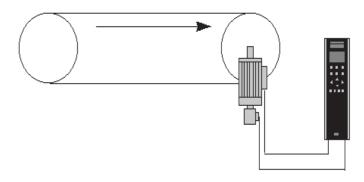
Function:	Parameter no.	Setting	Data value no.
Activation of process controller	100	Process control, closed loop	[3]
Feedback signal	314	Feedback signal	[2]
Terminal 60, min. scale	315	4 mA	
Terminal 60, max. scale	316	20 mA (factory setting)	
Minimum feedback	414	-10°C	
Maximum feedback	415	40°C	
Process units	416	°C	[10]
Reference	308	Reference (factory setting)	[1]
Terminal 53, min. scale	309	0 Volt (factory setting)	
Terminal 53, max. scale	310	10 Volt (factory setting)	
Minimum reference	204	-5°C	
Maximum reference	205	35°C	
Inverse control	437	Inverse	[1]
Min. frequency	201	10 Hz	
Max. frequency	202	50 Hz	
Proportional gain	440	Application-dependent (e.g. 1.0)	
Integration time	441	Application-dependent (e.g. 5 sec.)	



■ PID for speed control

Below are given a couple of examples of programming of VLT 5000 PID speed control.





175ZA451.10

A conveyor belt that carries heavy items must be maintained at a regular speed, which is set by means of a potentiometer within the range of 0-1500 rpm, 0-10 Volts. The speed selected must be kept constant and the integrated PID speed controller is to be applied. This is a case of normal control, which means that when the load increases, the power supplied to the conveyor belt motor increases in order to keep the speed constant. Correspondingly, when the load falls, the power is reduced. The feedback used is an encoder with a resolution

The feedback used is an encoder with a resolution of 1024 pulses/rev. push-pull.

- 1. Start/Stop
- 2. Speed reference 0-1500 rpm, 0-10 Volts
- 3. Encoder 1024 pulses/rev. push-pull.

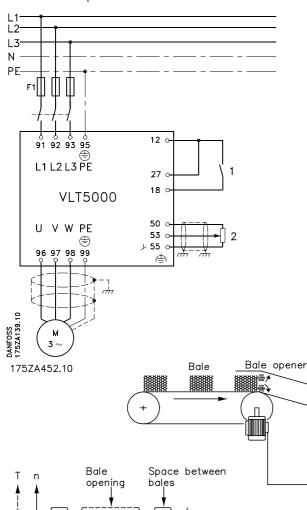
The following must be programmed in order shown - see explanation of settings in the Operating Instructions:

Function:	Parameter no.	Setting	Data value no.
Activation of process controller	100	Speed control, closed loop	[1]
Feedback signal	314	Feedback signal	[2]
Terminal 32	306	Encoder feedback, input B	[24]
Terminal 33	307	Encoder feedback, input A	[25]
Minimum feedback	414	0 rpm	
Maximum feedback	415	1650 rpm (max. ref. + 10%)	
Reference	308	Reference (factory setting)	[1]
Terminal 53, min. scale	309	0 Volt (factory setting)	
Terminal 53, max. scale	310	10 Volt (factory setting)	
Minimum reference	204	0 rpm	
Maximum reference	205	1500 rpm	
Min. speed	201	0 Hz	
Max. speed	202	75 Hz	
Proportional gain	417	Application-dependent	
Integration time	418	Application-dependent	
Differentiation time	419	Application-dependent	



■ PID for torque controller (open loop)

Below is given an example of programming of VLT 5000 torque controller.



A conveyor belt is used for carrying bales forward to a shredder at constant force, regardless of the conveyor belt speed. If there is a space between bales, the conveyor belt must move the next bale to the shredder as quickly as possible.

- 1. Start/stop.
- 2. Reference [Nm]

Optimisation of the torque controller

The basic settings have now been made and the factory setting has been optimised for most processes. It is rarely necessary to optimize the torque proportional gain in parameter 433 and the torque integration time in parameter 434.

In the cases where the factory setting has to be changed, it is recommended to change this setting by a maximum factor of +/- 2.

Feedback

The feedback signal is an estimated torque, calculated by the VLT frequency converter on the basis of the current values measured.

Reference

The reference is always in Nm.

A minimum and a maximum reference can be set (204) and 205) which limit the sum of all references. The reference range cannot go beyond the feedback range.

The following must be programmed in order shown:

Torque

Function:	Parameter no.	Setting	Data value no.
Activation of process controller	100	Torque control, open loop	[4]
Torque proportional gain	433	100% (factory setting)	
Torque integration time	434	0.02 sec (factory setting)	
Reference	308	Reference (factory setting)	[1]
Terminal 53, min. scale	309	0 volt (factory setting)	
Terminal 53, max. scale	310	10 volt (factory setting)	
Min. speed	201	0 Hz	
Max. speed	202	50 Hz	



■ Galvanic Isolation (PELV)

PELV offers protection by way of extra low voltage. Protection against electric shock is considered to be ensured when the electrical supply is of the PELV type and the installation is made as described in local/national regulations on PELV supplies.

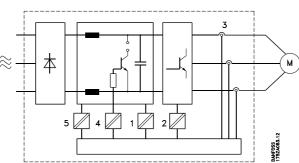
All control terminals and relay terminals 01-03 comply with PELV (Protective Extra Low Voltage) (Does not apply to 525-600 V units).

Galvanic (ensured) isolation is obtained by fulfilling requirements concerning higher isolation and by providing the relevant creapage/clearance distances. These requirements are described in the EN 50178 standard.

The components that make up the electrical isolation, as described below, also comply with the requirements concerning higher isolation and the relevant test as described in EN 50178.

The galvanic isolation can be shown in five locations (see drawing below), namely:

- 1. Power supply (SMPS) incl. signal isolation of U_{DC}, indicating the intermediate current voltage.
- 2. Gate drive that runs the IGBTs (trigger transformers/opto-couplers).
- 3. Current transducers (Hall effect current transducers).
- 4. Opto-coupler, brake module.
- 5. Opto-coupler, 24 V external supply.



Galvanic isolation

■ Earth leakage current

Earth leakage current is primarily caused by the capacitance between motor phases and the motor cable screen. When an RFI filter is used, this contributes additional leakage current, as the filter circuit is connected to earth through capacitors. The size of the leakage current to the ground depends on the following factors, in order of priority:

- 1. Length of motor cable
- 2. Motor cable with or without screen
- 3. Switching frequency
- 4. RFI filter used or not
- 5. Motor grounded on site or not

The leakage current is of importance to safety during handling/operation of the frequency converter if (by mistake) the frequency converter has not been earthed.

NB!:

Since the leakage current is >3.5 mA, reinforced earthing must be established, which is required if EN 50178 is to be complied with. For

3-phased frequency converters, only fault current relays which are suitable for protection against DC currents (Din VDE 0664) are to be used. RCD fault current relays type B comply with these requirements according to the norm IEC 755-2.

The following requirements must be complied with:

- Suitable for protecting equipment with a direct current content (DC) in the fault current (3-phase rectifier)
- Suitable for power-up with short pulse-shaped charging current to earth
- Suitable for a high leakage current.



■ Extreme Running Conditions

Short circuit

The frequency converter is protected against short circuits by means of current measurement in each of the three motor phases. A short circuit between two output phases will cause an overcurrent in the inverter. However, each transistor of the inverter will be turned off individually when the short circuit current exceeds the permitted value.

After 5-10 μ s the driver card turns off the inverter and the frequency converter will display a fault code, although depending on impedance and motor frequency.

Earth fault

The inverter cuts out within a few μ s in case of an earth fault on a motor phase, although depending on impedance and motor frequency.

Switching on the output

Switching on the output between the motor and the frequency converter is fully permitted. It is not possible to damage VLT 5000 Series in any way by switching on the output. However, fault messages may appear.

Motor-generated overvoltage

The voltage in the intermediate circuit is increased when the motor acts as a generator. This occurs in two cases:

 The load drives the motor (at constant output frequency from the frequency converter), ie. the load generates energy. During deceleration ("ramp-down") if the moment of inertia is high, the load is low and the ramp-down time is too short for the energy to be dissipated as a loss in the requency converter, the motor and the installation.

The control unit attempts to correct the ramp if possible. The inverter turns off to protect the transistors and the intermediate circuit capacitors when a certain voltage level is reached.

Mains drop-out

During a mains drop-out, the frequency converter continues until the intermediate circuit voltage drops below the minimum stop level, which is typically 15% below the frequency converter's lowest rated supply voltage.

The time before the inverter stops depends on the mains voltage before the drop-out and on the motor load.

Static overload

out after approx. 1.5 sec.

When the frequency converter is overloaded (the torque limit in parameter 221/222 has been reached), the controls will reduce the output frequency in an attempt to reduce the load.

If the overload is excessive, a current may occur that makes the frequency converter cut

Operation within the torque limit can be limited in time (0-60 s) in parameter 409.



■ Peak voltage on motor

When a transistor in the inverter is opened, the voltage across the motor increases by a dU/dt ratio that depends on:

- the motor cable (type, cross-section, length screened or unscreened)
- inductance

The natural induction causes an overshot U_{PEAK} in the motor voltage before it stabilises itself at a level which depends on the voltage in the intermediate circuit. The rise time and the peak voltage U_{PEAK} affect the service life of the motor. If the peak voltage is too high, motors without phase coil insulation are the ones that will primarily be affected. If the motor cable is short (a few metres), the rise time and peak voltage are lower. If the motor cable is long (100 m), the rise time and peak voltage will increase.

If very small motors are used without phase coil insulation, it is recommended to fit a LC filter after the frequency converter.

Typical values for the rise time and peak voltage U_{PEAK} are measured on the motor terminals between two phases.

To obtain approximate values for cable lengths and voltages not mentioned below, use the following rules of thumb:

- 1. Rise time increases/decreases proportionally with cable length.
- U_{PEAK} = DC link voltage x 1.9
 (DC link voltage = Mains voltage x 1.35).

3.
$$dU/dt = \frac{0.8 \times U_{PEAK}}{Rise \ time}$$

Data are measured according to IEC 60034-17.

VLT 5001-5011 / 380-500 V Mains Cable volt-Peak voltage dU/dt length age Rise time 50 metres 500 V 0.5 µsec. 1230 V 1968 V/μsec. 150 metres 500 V 1 µsec. 1270 V 1270 V/µsec. 50 metres 380 V 0.6 usec. 1000 V 1333 V/usec. 150 metres 380 V 1.33 1000 V 602 V/μsec. usec.

VLT 5016-5102 / 380-500 V						
	Mains					
Cable	volt-		Peak			
length	age	Rise time	voltage	dU/dt		
32 metres	380 V	$0.27~\mu sec.$	950 V	2794 V/μsec.		
70 metres	380 V	$0.60~\mu sec.$	950 V	1267 V/μsec.		
132 metres	380 V	1.11 µsec.	950 V	685 V/μsec.		

VLT 5122-5302 / 380-500 V						
	Mains					
Cable	volt-		Peak			
length	age	Rise time	voltage	dU/dt		
70 metres	400 V	0.34 μsec.	1040 V	2447 V/μsec.		

VLT 5350-5500 / 380-500 V						
Cable	Mains		Peak			
length	voltage	Rise time	voltage	dU/dt		
20 metres	460 V	1.41 µsec.	730 V	415 V/usec.		

VLT 5001-5011 / 525-600 V						
Cable	Mains		Peak			
length	voltage	Rise time	voltage	dU/dt		
35 metres	600 V	0.36 usec.	1360 V	3022 V/usec.		

VLT 5016-5062 / 525-600 V						
	Mains					
Cable	volt-		Peak			
length	age	Rise time	voltage	dU/dt		
35 metres	575 V	0.38 µsec.	1430 V	3011 V/μsec.		

VLT 5042-5352 / 525-690 V						
Cable	Mains		Peak			
length	voltage	Rise time	voltage	dU/dt		
25 metres	690 V	$0.59~\mu sec.$	1425	1983 V/μsec.		
25 metres	575 V	0.66 µsec.	1159	1428 V/μsec.		
25 metres	690 V ¹⁾	1.72 µsec.	1329	640 V/μsec.		

1) With Danfoss dU/dt filter.

■ Switching on the input

Switching on the input depends on the mains voltage in question and on whether Quick discharge of the intermediate capacitor has been selected. The table below states the waiting time between cut-ins.

Mains	380 V	415 V	460 V	500 V	690 V
voltage					
Without	48 s	65 s	89 s	117 s	120 s
quick					
discharge					
With quick	74 s	95 s	123 s	158 s	_
discharge					

■ Acoustic noise

The acoustic interference from the frequency converter comes from two sources:

- 1. DC intermediate circuit coils.
- 2. Integral fan.

Below are the typical values measured at a distance of 1 m from the unit at full load:



VLT 5001-5006 200 - 240 V, VLT 5001-5011

380 - 500 V

IP 20 units: 50 dB(A)
IP 54 units: 62 dB(A)

VLT 5008-5027 200 - 240 V, VLT 5016-5102 380 - 500 V

IP 20 units: 61 dB(A)

IP 20 unit (VLT

5062-5102): 67 dB(A) IP 54 units: 66 dB(A)

VLT 5032-5052 / 200 - 240 V

IP 20/NEMA 1 units: 70 dB(A)
IP 54 units: 65 dB(A)

VLT 5122-5302 / 380 - 500 V

IP 21/NEMA 1 units: 74 dB(A)
IP 54 units: 74 dB(A)

VLT 5350-5500 / 380 - 500 V

IP 20/NEMA 1 units: 80 dB(A)
IP 54 units: 80 dB(A)

VLT 5001-5011 / 525 - 600 V

IP 20/NEMA 1 units: 62 dB(A)

VLT 5016-5062 / 525 - 600 V

IP 20/NEMA 1 units: 66 dB(A)

VLT 5042-5352 / 525 - 690 V

IP 20/NEMA 1 units: 74 dB(A)
IP 54 units: 74 dB(A)

Measured 1 meter from the unit at full load.

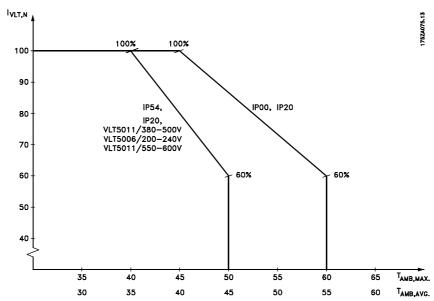


■ Derating

■ Derating for ambient temperature

The ambient temperature ($T_{AMB,MAX}$) is the maximum temperature allowed. The average ($T_{AMB,AVG}$) measured over 24 hours must be at least 5°C lower.

If the frequency converter is operated at temperatures above 45°C, a derating of the continuous output current is necessary.



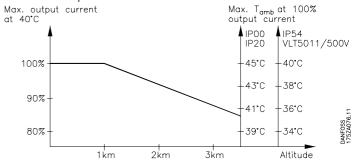
The current of VLT 5152-5302, 380-500 V and VLT 5042-5352, 525-690 V, is to be derated 1% / °C above 45°C maximum (160% overload) and 40°C maximum (110% overload).

■ Derating for Air Pressure

Below 1000 m altitude no derating is necessary.

Above 1000 m the ambient temperature (T_{AMB}) or max. output current ($I_{VLT,MAX}$) must be derated in accordance with the diagram below:

- 1. Derating of output current versus altitude at $T_{AMB} = max$. $45^{\circ}C$
- 2. Derating of max. T_{AMB} versus altitude at 100% output current.





■ Derating for Running at Low Speed

When a motor is connected to a frequency converter, it is necessary to check whether the cooling of the motor is adequate.

At low RPM values, the motor fan is not able to supply the required volume of air for cooling. This problem occurs when the load torque is constant (e.g. a conveyor belt) across the regulating range. The reduced ventilation available decides the size of the torque that can be permitted under a continuous load. If the motor is to run continuously at an RPM value lower than half the rated value, the motor must be supplied with additional air for cooling. Instead of such extra cooling, the load level of the motor can be reduced. This can be done by choosing a bigger motor. However, the design of

the frequency converter sets limits as to the size of motor that can be connected to it.

■ Derating for Installing Long Motor Cables or Cables with Larger Cross-section

The frequency converter has been tested using 300 m unscreened cable and 150 m screened cable.

The frequency converter has been designed to work using a motor cable with a rated cross-section. If a cable with a larger cross-section is to be used, it is recom- mended to reduce the output current by 5% for every step the cross-section is increased. (Increased cable cross-section leads to increased capacity to earth, and thus an increased earth leakage current).

■ Derating for high switching frequency

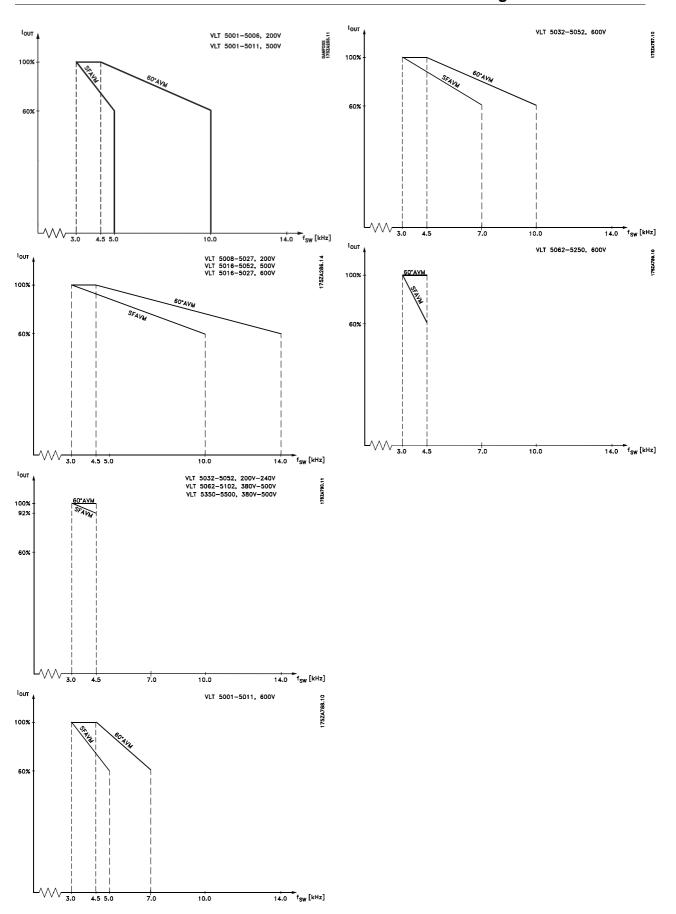
A higher switching frequency (to be set in parameter 411) leads to higher losses in the electronics of the frequency converter.

If SFAVM has been selected in parameter 446, the frequency converter will automatically derate the rated output current $I_{VLT,N}$ when the switching frequency exceeds 3.0 kHz.

If 60°AVM is selected, the frequency converter will automatically derate when the switching frequency exceeds 4.5 kHz. In both cases, the reduction is carried out linearly, down to 60% of $I_{VLT,N}$. The table gives the min., max. and factory-set switching frequencies for frequency converter. The switching pattern can be changed in parameter 446 and the switching frequency in parameter 411.

	SFAVM		60 deg. AVM			
	Min. [kHz]	Max. [kHz]	Fac. [kHz]	Min. [kHz]	Max. [kHz]	Fac. [kHz]
VLT 5001-5006, 200 V	3.0	5.0	3.0	3.0	10.0	4.5
VLT 5008-5027, 200 V	3.0	10.0	3.0	3.0	14.0	4.5
VLT 5032-5052, 200 V	3.0	4.5	3.0	3.0	4.5	4.5
VLT 5001-5011, 500 V	3.0	5.0	3.0	3.0	10.0	4.5
VLT 5016-5052, 500 V	3.0	10.0	3.0	3.0	14.0	4.5
VLT 5062-5102, 500 V	3.0	4.5	3.0	3.0	4.5	4.5
VLT 5122-5302, 500 V	3.0	3.0	3.0	3.0	4.5	4.5
VLT 5350-5500, 500 V	3.0	4.5	3.0	3.0	4.5	4.5
VLT 5001-5011, 600 V	3.0	5.0	3.0	4.5	7.0	4.5
VLT 5016-5027, 600 V	3.0	10.0	3.0	3.0	14.0	4.5
VLT 5032-5052, 600 V	3.0	7.0	3.0	3.0	10.0	4.5
VLT 5062, 600 V	3.0	4.5	3.0	3.0	4.5	4.5
VLT 5042-5302, 690 V	1.5	2.0	2.0	1.5	3.0	3.0
VLT 5352, 690 V	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	2.0	2.0

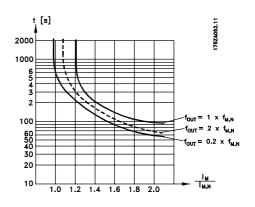






■ Motor thermal protection

The motor temperature is calculated on the basis of motor current, output frequency and time. See parameter 128 in the Operating Instructions.



■ Vibration and Shock

The frequency converter has been tested according to a procedure based on the following standards:

IEC 68-2-6: Vibration (sinusoidal) - 1970
IEC 68-2-34: Random vibration broad-band

- general requirements

IEC 68-2-35: Random vibration broad-band

- high reproducibility

IEC 68-2-36: Random vibration broad-band

- medium reproducibility

The frequency converter complies with requirements that correspond to conditions when the unit is mounted on the walls and floors of production premises, as well as in panels bolted to walls or floors.

■ Air Humidity

The frequency converter has been designed to meet the IEC 68-2-3 standard, EN 50178 pkt. 9.4.2.2/DIN 40040, class E, at 40°C.



■ Aggressive environments

In common with all electronic equipment, a frequency converter contains a large number of mechanical and electronic components, all of which are vulnerable to environmental effects to some extent.

The frequency converter should not therefore be installed in environ- ments with airborne liquids, particles or gases capable of affecting and damaging the electronic components. Failure to take the necessary protective measures increases the risk of stoppages, thus reducing the life of the frequency converter.

Liquids can be carried through the air and condense in the frequency converter. In addition to this, liquids may cause corrosion of components and metal parts. Steam, oil and salt water may cause corrosion of components and metal parts. In such environments, equipment with enclosure rating IP 54 is recommended. As an extra protection, coated printet circuit boads can be orded as an option.

Airborne Particles such as dust particles may cause mechanical, electrical or thermal failure in the frequency converter. A typical indicator of excessive levels of airborne particles is dust particles around the frequency converter fan. In very dusty environments, equipment with enclosure rating IP 54 or a cabinet for IP 00/IP 20/Nema 1 equipment is recommended.

In environments with high temperatures and humidity, corrosive gases such as sulphur, nitrogen and chlorine compounds will cause chemical processes on the frequency converter components.

Such chemical reactions will rapidly affect and damage the electronic components. In such environments, it is recommended that equipment is mounted in a cabinet with fresh air ventilation, keeping aggressive gases away from the frequency converter. An extra protection in such areas a conformal coating of the printed ircuit boards can be ordered as an option.



NB!:

Mounting frequency converters in aggressive environments will increase the risk of stoppages and furthermore considerably reduce the life of the converter.

Before the installation of the frequency converter, the ambient air should be checked for liquids, particles and gases. This may be done by observing existing installations in this environment. Typical indicators of harmful airborne liquids are water or oil on metal parts, or corrosion of metal parts.

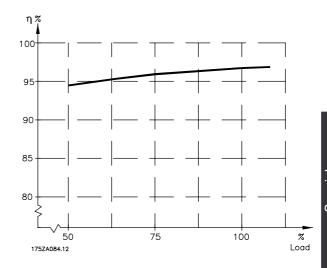
Excessive dust particle levels are often found on installation cabinets and existing electrical installations. One indicator of aggressive airborne gases is blackening of copper rails and cable ends on existing installations.

See also Instruction MN.90.IX.YY



■ Efficiency

To reduce energy consumption it is very important to optimize the efficiency of a system. The efficiency of each single element in the system should be as high as possible.



Efficiency of VLT 5000 Series (η_{VLT})

The load on the frequency converter has little effect on its efficiency. In general, the efficiency is the same at the rated motor frequency $f_{M,N}$, regardless of whether the motor supplies 100% of the rated shaft torque or only 75%, i.e. in case of part loads.

This also means that the efficieny of the frequency converter does not change even if other U/f characteristics are chosen.

However, the U/f characteristics influence the efficiency of the motor.

The efficiency declines a little when the switching frequency is set to a value of above 4 kHz (3 kHz for VLT 5005) (parameter 411). The rate of efficiency will also be slightly reduced if the mains voltage is 500 V, or if the motor cable is longer than 30 m.

Efficiency of the motor (η_{MOTOR})

The efficiency of a motor connected to the frequency converter depends on the sine shape of the current. In general, the efficiency is just as good as with mains operation. The efficiency of the motor depends on the type of motor.

In the range of 75-100% of the rated torque, the efficiency of the motor is practically constant, both when it is controlled by the frequency converter and when it runs directly on mains.

In small motors, the influence from the U/f characteristic on efficiency is marginal; however, in motors from 11 kW and up, the advantages are significant.

In general, the switching frequency does not affect the efficiency of small motors. Motors from 11 kW and up have their efficiency improved (1-2%). This is because the sine shape of the motor current is almost perfect at high switching frequency.

Efficiency of the system (η_{SYSTEM})

To calculate the system efficiency, the efficiency of VLT 5000 Series (η_{VLT}) is multiplied by the efficiency of the motor (η_{MOTOR}):

 η_{SYSTEM}) = $\eta_{\text{VLT}} \times \eta_{\text{MOTOR}}$

Based on the graph on this page, it is possible to calculate the efficiency of the system at different loads.



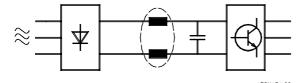
■ Mains Supply Interference/Harmonics

A frequency converter takes up a non-sinusoidal current from mains, which increases the input current I_{RMS} . A non-sinusoidal current can be transformed by means of a Fourier analysis and split up into sine wave currents with different frequencies, i.e. different harmonic currents I_N with 50 Hz as the basic frequency:

Harmonic currents	I_1	l ₅	l ₇
Hz	50 Hz	250 Hz	350 Hz

The harmonics do not affect the power consumption directly, but increase the heat losses in the installation (transformer, cables). Consequently, in plants with a rather high percentage of rectifier load, it is important to maintain harmonic currents at a low level to avoid overload of the transformer and high temperature in the cables.

Some of the harmonic currents might disturb communication equipment connected to the same transformer or cause resonance in connection with power-factor correction batteries.



Harmonic currents compared to the RMS input current:

	Input current
I _{RMS}	1.0
l ₁	0.9
l ₅	0.4
	0.2
I ₁₁₋₄₉	< 0.1

To ensure low, harmonic currents, the frequency converter has intermediate circuit coils as standard. This normally reduces the input current I _{RMS} by 40%.

The voltage distortion on the mains supply depends on the size of the harmonic currents multiplied by the mains impedance for the frequency in question. The total voltage distortion THD is calculated on the basis of the individual voltage harmonics using the following formula:

$$THD\% = \sqrt{U_{5}^{2} + U_{7}^{2} + \ldots + U_{N}^{2}} \quad \left(U_{N}\% of \ U\right)$$

See also Application Note MN.90.FX.02.

■ Power Factor

The power factor is the relation between I_1 and I_{RMS} .

The power factor for 3-phase control:

Power factor =
$$\frac{\sqrt{3} \times U \times I_{1 \times \cos \varphi 1}}{\sqrt{3} \times U \times I_{RMS}}$$

$$=\,\frac{\rm I_{1\,x\,cos\,}\varphi_{1}}{\rm I_{RMS}}\,=\,\frac{\rm I_{1}}{\rm I_{RMS}}\,{\rm since}\,{\rm cos}\varphi_{\,1}\,=\,1$$

The power factor indicates the extent to which the frequency converter imposes a load on the mains supply.

The lower the power factor, the higher the I_{RMS} for the same kW performance.

In addition, a high power factor indicates that the different harmonic currents are low.

$$I_{RMS} = \sqrt{I_{1}^{2} + I_{5}^{2} + I_{7}^{2} + .. + I_{n}^{2}}$$



■ CE labelling

What is CE labelling?

The purpose of CE labelling is to avoid technical obstacles to trade within EFTA and the EU. The EU has introduced the CE label as a simple way of showing whether a product complies with the relevant EU directives. The CE label says nothing about the specifications or quality of the product. Frequency converters are regulated by three EU directives:

The machinery directive (98/37/EEC)

All machines with critical moving parts are covered by the machinery directive, which came into force on 1 January 1995. Since a frequency converter is largely electrical, it does not fall under the machinery directive. However, if a frequency converter is supplied for use in a machine, we provide information on safety aspects relating to the frequency converter. We do this by means of a manufacturer's declaration.

The low-voltage directive (73/23/EEC)

Frequency converters must be CE labelled in accordance with the low-voltage directive, which came into force on 1 January 1997. The directive applies to all electrical equipment and appliances used in the 50 - 1000 Volt AC and the 75 - 1500 Volt DC voltage ranges. Danfoss CE labels in accordance with the directive and issues a declaration of conformity upon request.

The EMC directive (89/336/EEC)

EMC is short for electromagnetic compatibility. The presence of electromagnetic compatibility means that the mutual interference between different components/appliances is so small that the functioning of the appliances is not affected.

The EMC directive came into force on 1 January 1996. Danfoss CE labels in accordance with the directive and issues a declaration of conformity upon request. In order that EMC-correct installation can be carried out, this manual gives detailed instructions for installation. In addition, we specify the standards which our different products comply with. We offer the filters that can be seen from the specifications and provide other types of assistance to ensure the optimum EMC result.

In the great majority of cases, the frequency converter is used by professionals of the trade as a complex component forming part of a larger appliance, system or installation. It must be noted that the responsibility for the final EMC properties of the appliance, system or installation rests with the installer.

■ What is covered

The EU "Guidelines on the Application of Council Directive 89/336/EEC" outline three typical situations of using a frequency converter. For each of these situations, explanations are offered as to whether the situation in question is covered by the EMC directive and must be CE labelled.

- The frequency converter is sold directly to the end-consumer. The frequency converter is for example sold to a DIY market. The end-consumer is a layman. He installs the frequency converter himself for use with a hobby machine, a kitchen appliance, etc. For such applications, the VLT frequency converter must be CE labelled in accordance with the EMC directive.
- 2. The frequency converter is sold for installation in a plant. The plant is built up by professionals of the trade. It could be a production plant or a heating/ventilation plant designed and installed by professionals of the trade. Neither the frequency converter nor the finished plant has to be CE labelled under the EMC directive. However, the unit must comply with the basic EMC requirements of the directive. The installer can ensure this by using components, appliances and systems that are CE labelled under the EMC directive.
- 3. The frequency converter is sold as part of a complete system. The system is being marketed as complete. It could be e.g. an air-conditioning system. The complete system must be CE labelled in accordance with the EMC directive. The manufacturer who supplies the system can ensure CE labelling under the EMC directive either by using CE labelled components or by testing the EMC of the system. If he chooses to use only CE labelled components, he does not have to test the entire system.

■ Danfoss VLT frequency converter and CE labeling

CE labelling is a positive feature when used for its original purpose, i.e. to facilitate trade within the EU and EFTA.

However, CE labelling may cover many different specifications. This means that is has to be checked what a given CE label specifically covers.

The specifications covered can in fact be widely different. That is why a CE label can give the installer



a false feeling of security when using a frequency converter as a component in a system or an appliance.

We CE label our VLT frequency converters in accordance with the low-voltage directive. This means that as long as the VLT frequency converter is installed correctly, we guarantee that it complies with the low-voltage directive. We issue a declaration of conformity that confirms our CE labelling in accordance with the low-voltage directive.

The CE label also applies to the EMC directive, on condition that the instructions given in the Operating Instructions for EMC-correct installation and filtering have been followed. On this basis, a declaration of conformity in accordance with the EMC directive is issued.

The Operating Instructions give detailed instructions for installation to ensure that your installation is EMC-correct. Furthermore, we specify which norms that are complied with by our different products.

We offer the filters that can be seen from the specifications and gladly provide other types of assistance that can help you obtain the best EMC result.

■ Compliance with EMC directive 89/336/EEC

In the great majority of cases, the VLT frequency converter is used by professionals of the trade as a complex component forming part of a larger appliance, system or installation. It must be noted that the responsibility for the final EMC properties of the appliance, system or installation rests with the installer. As an aid to the installer, Danfoss has prepared EMC installation guidelines for the Power Drive System. The standards and test levels stated for Power Drive Systems are complied with, provided the right EMC-correct instructions for installation have been followed, see electrical installation.



■ General aspects of EMC emissions

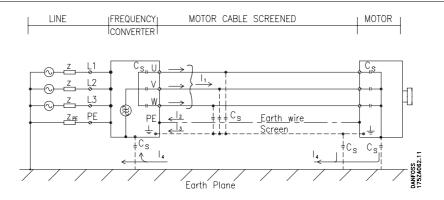
Electrical interference at frequences in the range 150 kHz to 30 MHz are usually conducted. Airborne interference from the drive system in the range 30 MHz to 1 GHz is generated from the inverter, the motor cable and the motor.

As the sketch below shows, capacitive currents in the motor cable together with a high dV/dt from the motor voltage generate leakage currents.

The use of a screened motor cable increases the leakage current (see figure below). This is because screened cables have higher capacitance to earth than unscreened cables. If the leakage current is not filtered, it will cause greater interference on the mains in the radio frequency range below approx. 5 MHz. Since the leakage current (I_1) is carried back to the unit through the screen (I_3), there will in principle only be a small electro-magnetic field (I_4) from the screened motor cable according to the below figure.

The screen reduces the radiated interference, but increases the low-frequency interference on the mains. The motor cable screen must be connected to the VLT enclosure as well as on the motor enclosure. The best way of doing this is by using integrated screen clamps so as to avoid twisted screen ends (pigtails). These increase the screen impedance at higher frequencies, which reduces the screen effect and increases the leakage current (I₄).

If a screened cable is used for Profibus, standard bus, relay, control cable, signal interface and brake, the screen must be mounted on the enclosure at both ends. In some situations, however, it will be necessary to break the screen to avoid current loops.



In the cases when the screen is to be placed on a mounting plate for the VLT frequency converter, the mounting plate must be made of metal, because the screen currents are to be conveyed back to the unit. It is also important to ensure good electrical contact from the mounting plate through the mounting screws to the VLT frequency converter chassis.

With respect to installation, it is generally less complicated to use unscreened cables than screened ones.

NB!:

Please note, however, that when unscreened cables are used, some emission requirements are not complied with, although the immunity requirements are complied with.

In order to reduce the interference level from the system overall (unit + installation) as far as possible, it is important to make motor and brake cables as short as possible. Cables with a sensitive signal level must not be alongside motor and brake cables. Radio interference higher than 50 MHz (airborne) will be generated especially by the control electronics.

*Janfoss*VLT 5000 Design Guide

EMC Test Results (Emission, Immunity)

The following test results have been obtained using a system with a VLT frequency converter (with options if relevant), a screened control cable, a control box with potentiometer, as well as a motor and motor cable.

as won as a motor and motor sasis.					
VLT 5001-5011/380-500V		Emission			
VLT 5001-5006/200-240 V	Environment	Industrial er	vironment	Housing, trades	and light industries
	Basic standard	EN 55011	Class A1	EN 5501	1 Class B1
Setup	Motor cable	Conducted	Radiated	Conducted	Radiated
		150 kHz-30 MHz	30 MHz-1 GHz	150 kHz-30 MHz	30 MHz-1 GHz
	300 m unscreened/unarmoured	Yes 3)	No	No	No
\	50 m br. screened/armoured				
VLT 5000 with RFI filter option	(Bookstyle 20m)	Yes	Yes	Yes 2)	No
	150m br. screened/armoured	Yes 1)	Yes 1)	No	No
VIII FOOO with DEL filter entire	300 m unscreened/unarmoured	Yes	No	No	No
VLT 5000 with RFI filter option	50 m br. screened/armoured	Yes	Yes	Yes 2)	No
(+ LC filter)	150m br. screened/armoured	Yes	Yes	No	No

- 1) For VLT 5011/380-500 V and VLT 5006/200-240 V this is only complied with if a maximum braided screened/armoured cable of 100 m is used.
- 2) Does not apply to 5011/380-500 V and 5006/200-240 V
- 3) Depending on installation conditions

VLT 5016-5500/380-500 V		Emission			
VLT 5008-5052/200-240 V	Environment	Industrial er	nvironment	Housing, trades	and light industries
VLT 5042-5352/525-690 V	Basic standard	EN 55011	Class A1	EN 550	11 Class B
Setup	Motor cable	Conducted	Radiated	Conducted	Radiated
		150 kHz-30 MHz	30 MHz-1 GHz	150 kHz-30 MHz	30 MHz-1 GHz
VLT 5000 without	300 unscreened/unarmoured	No	No	No	No
RFI filter option ^{4) 5)}	150 m br. screened/armoured	No	Yes ⁶⁾	No	No
VLT 5000	300 m unscreened/unarmoured	Yes 1) 2) 6)	No	No	No
	50 m br. screened/armoured	Yes	Yes ⁶⁾	Yes 1)3) 6)	No
with RFI filter option	150 m br. screened/armoured	Yes	Yes ⁶⁾	No	No

- 1) Does not apply to VLT 5350-5500 / 380-500 V.
- 2) Depending on installation conditions.
- 3) VLT 5032-5052 / 200-240 V with external filter.
- 4) VLT 5122-5302, 380-500 V, fulfils class A-2 at 50 m screened cable without RFI filter (typecode R0).
- 5) VLT 5042-5352, 525-690 V, fulfils class A2 at 150 m screened cable without RFI filter (R0).
- 6) Does not apply to VLT 5042-5352, 525-690 V.

In order to minimise the conducted noise to the mains supply and the radiated noise from the frequency converter system, the motor cables should be as short as possible and the screen ends should be made in accordance with the section on electrical installation.



■ Required compliance levels

Standard / environment	First environme	nt	Second environn	nent
	Housing, trades	and light industries	Industrial environ	ment
	Conducted	Radiated	Conducted	Radiated
EN 61000-6-3	Class B	Class B		
EN 61000-6-4			Class A-1	Class A-1
EN 61800-3 (restricted)	Class A-1	Class A-1	Class A-2	Class A-2
EN 61800-3 (unrestricted)	Class B	Class B	Class A-1	Class A-1

EN 55011: Threshold values and measuring

methods for radio interference from industrial, scientific and medical (ISM)

high-frequency equipment.

Class A-1: Equipment used in a industrial

environment. Unrestricted

distribution.

Class A-2: Equipment used in an industrial

environment. Restricted distribution.

Class B: Equipment used in areas with a

public supply network (dwellings, commerce and light industries).

Unrestricted distribution.

■ EMC Immunity

In order to document immunity against electrical interference from electrical phenomena, the following immunity tests have been made on a system consisting of a frequency converter (with options, if relevant), a screened control cable and a control box with potentiometer, motor cable, and motor.

The tests were performed in accordance with the following basic standards:

- EN 61000-4-2 (IEC 61000-4-2): Electrostatic discharges (ESD)

 Simulation of electrostatic discharges
 from human beings.
- EN 61000-4-3 (IEC 61000-4-3): Incoming electromagnetic field radiation, amplitude modulated
 Simulation of the effects of radar and radio communication equipment as well as mobile communications.
- EN 61000-4-4 (IEC 61000-4-4): Burst transients Simulation of interference brought about by switching with a contactor, relays or similar devices.
- EN 61000-4-5 (IEC 61000-4-5): Surge transients Simulation of transients brouht e.g. by lightning that strikes near installations.

- VDE 0160 class W2 test pulse: Mains transients
 Simulation of high-energy transients brought
 about by main fuse breakage, switching of power
 factor correction capacitors, etc.
- EN 61000-4-6 (IEC 61000-4 6): RF Common mode
 Simulation of the effect from radio-transmitting equipment connected to connection cables.

See following EMC immunity form.

Dante

Immunity continued

VLT 5001-5500 380-500 V, VLT 5001-50	27 200–240 V						
Basic standard	Burst IEC 61000-4-4		urge 1000-4-5	ESD IEC 61000-4-2	Radiated electromagnetic field IEC 61000-4-3	Mains distortion VDE 0160	RF common mode voltage IEC 61000-4-6
Acceptance criterion	В	В		В	А		А
Port connection	CM	DM	CM		_	CM	CM
Line	OK	OK	_	_	_	OK	OK
Motor	OK	-	-	_		_	OK
Control lines	OK	-	OK	_		_	OK
Application and Fieldbus options	OK	-	OK	_		_	OK
Signal interface<3 m	OK	_	_	_	П	_	_
Enclosure	_	_	_	OK	OK	_	OK
Load sharing	OK	-	-	_	ı	-	OK
Standard bus	OK	-	OK	_	_	_	OK
Brake	OK	-	_	_		_	OK
External 24 V DC	OK	=	OK	_	=	_	OK

DM: Differential mode

CM: Common mode

CCC: Capacitive clamp coupling

DCN: Direct coupling network

Immunity continued

VLT 5001-5500 380-500 V, VLT 5001-502	7 200–240 V					
Basic specifications	Burst	Surge	ESD	Radiated electromagnetic field	Mains	RF common
	IEC 61000-4-4	IEC 61000-4-5	IEC 61000-4-2	IEC 61000-4-3	distortion	mode voltage
					VDE 0160	IEC 61000-4-6
Line	4kV/5 kHz/DCN	2 kV/2Ω 4 kV/12Ω	_	-	2,3 x U _N ²⁾	10 V _{RMS}
Motor	4kV/5 kHz/CCC		_	-	_	10 V _{RMS}
Control lines	2kV/5 kHz/CCC	$-$ 2 kV/2 $\Omega^{1)}$	_	-	_	10 V _{RMS}
Application and Fieldbus options	2kV/5 kHz/CCC	- 2 kV/2Ω ¹⁾	_	_	-	10 V _{RMS}
Signal interface	1kV/5 kHz/CCC		_	_	-	10 V _{RMS}
<3 m						
Enclosure	-		8 kV AD	10 V/m	_	_
			6 kV CD			
Load sharing	4kV/5 kHz/CCC	= =	_		_	10 V _{RMS}
Standard bus	2kV/5 kHz/CCC	- 4 kV/2Ω ¹⁾	_		_	10 V _{RMS}
Brake	4kV/5 kHz/CCC		_		_	10 V _{RMS}
External 24 V DC	2kV/5 kHz/CCC	- 4 kV/2Ω¹)	_	_	_	10 V _{RMS}

DM: Differential mode

CM: Common mode

CCC: Capacitive clamp coupling

DCN: Direct coupling network

1. Injection on cable shield.

2. 2,3 x U_N : max. test pulse 380 V_{AC} : Class 2/1250 V_{PEAK} , 415 V_{AC} : Class 1/1350 V_{PEAK}



■ Definitions

VLT:

VLT,MAX

The maximum output current.

 $I_{VLT,N}$

The rated output current supplied by the frequency converter.

U_{VLT} MAX

The maximum output voltage.

Output:

 I_{M}

The current transmitted to the motor.

U_M

The voltage transmitted to the motor.

 f_M

The frequency transmitted to the motor.

 f_{JOG}

The frequency transmitted to the motor when the jog function is activated (via digital terminals or the keypad).

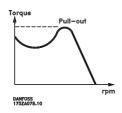
fMIN

The minimum frequency transmitted to the motor.

 f_{MAX}

The maximum frequency transmitted to the motor.

Break-away torque:



η_{VLT}

The efficiency of the frequency converter is defined as the ratio between the power output and the power input.

Input:

Control command:

By means of LCP and the digital inputs, it is possible to start and stop the connected motor. Functions are divided into two groups, with the following priorities:

Group 1 Reset, Coasting stop, Reset and

Coasting stop, Quick-stop, DC braking, Stop and the "Stop"

key.

Group 2 Start, Pulse start, Reversing,

Start reversing, Jog and Freeze

output

Group 1 functions are called Start-disable commands. The difference between group 1 and group 2 is that in group 1 all stop signals must be cancelled for the motor to start. The motor can then be started by means of a single start signal in group 2.

A stop command given as a group 1 command results in the display indication STOP.

A missing stop command given as a group 2 command results in the display indication STAND BY.

Start-disable command:

A stop command that belongs to group 1 of the control commands - see this group.

Stop command:

See Control commands.

Motor:

 $I_{M,N}$

The rated motor current (nameplate data).

f_{M,N}

The rated motor frequency (nameplate data).

 $U_{M,N}$

The rated motor voltage (nameplate data).

 $P_{M,N}$

The rated power delivered by the motor (nameplate data).

 $n_{M,N}$

The rated motor speed (nameplate data).

 $T_{M,N}$

The rated torque (motor).

References:

preset ref.

A firmly defined reference which can be set from -100% to +100% of the reference range. There are four preset references, which can be selected via the digital terminals.

analogue ref.

A signal transmitted to input 53, 54 or 60. Can be voltage or current.



pulse ref.

A signal transmitted to the digital inputs (terminal 17 or 29).

binary ref.

A signal transmitted to the serial communication port.

Ref_{MIN}

The smallest value which the reference signal may have. Set in parameter 204.

Ref_{MAX}

The maximum value which the reference signal may have. Set in parameter 205.

Miscellaneous:

ELCB:

Earth Leakage Circuit Breaker.

lsb:

Least significant bit.

Used in serial communication.

msb

Most significant bit.

Used in serial communication.

PID:

The PID regulator maintains the desired speed (pressure, temperature, etc.) by adjusting the output frequency to match the varying load.

Trip:

A state which occurs in different situations, e.g. if the frequency converter is subjected to an overtemperature. A trip can be cancelled by pressing reset or, in some cases, automatically.

Trip locked:

A state which occurs in different situations, e.g. if the frequency converter is subject to an overtemperature. A locked trip can be cancelled by cutting off mains and restarting the frequency converter.

Initialising:

If initialising is carried out, the frequency converter returns to the factory setting.

Setup:

There are four Setups, in which it is possible to save parameter settings. It is possible to change between the four parameter Setups and to edit one Setup, while another Setup is active.

LCP:

The control panel, which makes up a complete interface for control and programming of VLT 5000 Series. The control panel is detachable and may, as an alternative, be installed up to 3 metres away from the frequency converter, i.e. in a front panel, by means of the installation kit option.

VVCplus

If compared with standard voltage/frequency ratio control, VVC^{plus} improves the dynamics and the stability, both when the speed reference is changed and in relation to the load torque.

Slip compensation:

Normally, the motor speed will be affected by the load, but this load dependence is unwanted. The frequency converter compensates for the slip by giving the frequency a supplement that follows the measured effective current.

Thermistor:

A temperature-dependent resistor placed where the temperature is to be monitored (frequency converter or motor).

Analogue inputs:

The analogue inputs can be used for controlling various functions of the frequency converter.

There are two types of analogue inputs:

Current input, 0-20 mA

Voltage input, 0-10 V DC.

Analogue outputs:

There are two analogue outputs, which are able to supply a signal of 0-20 mA, 4-20 mA or a digital signal.

Digital inputs:

The digital inputs can be used for controlling various functions of the frequency converter.

Digital outputs:

There are four digital outputs, two of which activate a relay switch. The outputs are able to supply a 24 V DC (max. 40 mA) signal.

Brake resistor:

The brake resistor is a module capable of absorbing the brake power that is generated in regenerative braking. This regenerative braking power increases the intermediate circuit voltage and a brake chopper ensures that the power is transmitted to the brake resistor.



Pulse encoder:

An external, digital pulse transmitter used for feeding back information on motor speed. The encoder is used in applications where great accuracy in speed control is required.

AWG:

Means American Wire Gauge, i.e. the American measuring unit for cable cross-section.

Manual initialisation:

Press the [CHANGE DATA] + [MENU] + [OK] keys at the same time to carry out manual initialisation.

60° AVM

Switching pattern called 60° \underline{A} synchronous V ector M odulation.

SFAVM

Switching pattern called \underline{S} tator \underline{F} lux oriented \underline{A} synchronous V ector M odulation.

Automatic motor adjustment, AMA:

Automatic motor adjustment algorithm, which determines the electrical parameters for the connected motor, at standstill.

On-line/off-line parameters:

On-line parameters are activated immediately after the data value is changed. Off-line parameters are not activated until OK has been entered on the control unit.

VT characteristics:

Variable torque characteristics, used for pumps and fans.

CT characteristics:

Constant torque characteristics, used for all applications, such as conveyor belts and cranes. CT characteristics are not used for pumps and fans.

MCM:

Stands for Mille Circular Mil, an American measuring unit for cable cross-section. 1 MCM $\equiv 0.5067$ mm².



■ Factory Settings

PNU	Parameter	Factory setting	Range	Changes	4-Setup	Conversion	Data
#	description			during operation	on	index	type
001	Language	English		Yes	No	0	5
002	Local/remote control	Remote control		Yes	Yes	0	5
003	Local reference	000.000		Yes	Yes	-3	4
004	Active setup	Setup 1		Yes	No	0	5
005	Programming setup	Active setup		Yes	No	0	5
006	Copying of setups	No copying		No	No	0	5
007	LCP copy	No copying		No	No	0	5
800	Display scaling of motor frequency	1	0.01 - 500.00	Yes	Yes	-2	6
009	Display line 2	Frequency [Hz]		Yes	Yes	0	5
010	Display line 1.1	Reference [%]		Yes	Yes	0	5
011	Display line 1.2	Motor current [A]		Yes	Yes	0	5
012	Display line 1.3	Power [kW]		Yes	Yes	0	5
013	Local control/configura	LCP digital control/as		Yes	Yes	0	5
		par.100					
014	Local stop	Possible		Yes	Yes	0	5
015	Local jog	Not possible		Yes	Yes	0	5
016	Local reversing	Not possible		Yes	Yes	0	5
017	Local reset of trip	Possible	<u> </u>	Yes	Yes	0	5
018	Lock for data change	Not locked		Yes	Yes	0	5
019	Operating state at power-up, local	Forced stop, use		Yes	Yes	0	5
	control	saved ref.					
027	Warning readout	Warning in line 1/2		Yes	No	0	5

Changes during operation:

"Yes" means that the parameter can be changed, while the frequency converter is in operation. "No" means that the frequency converter must be stopped before a change can be made.

4-Setup:

"Yes" means that the parameter can be programmed individually in each of the four setups, i.e. the same parameter can have four different data values. "No" means that the data value will be the same in all four setups.

Conversion index:

This number refers to a conversion figure to be used when writing or reading by means of a frequency converter.

Conversion index	Conversion factor
74	0.1
2	100
1	10
0	1
	0.1
-2	0.01
3	0.001
-4	0.0001

Data type: Data type shows the type and length of the telegram. Data type Description Integer 16 Integer 32 Unsigned 8 Unsigned 16 Unsigned 32 Text string



PNU	Parameter	Factory setting	Range	Changes	4-Setup	Conversion	Data
#	description			during oper	ation	index	type
100	Configuration	Speed control, open loop		No	Yes	0	5
101	Torque characteristics	High - constant torque		Yes	Yes	0	5
102	Motor power	Depends on the unit	0.18-600 kW	No	Yes	1	6
103	Motor voltage	Depends on the unit	200 - 600 V	No	Yes	0	6
104	Motor frequency	50 Hz / 60 Hz		No	Yes	0	6
105	Motor current	Depends on the unit	0.01-l _{VLT,MAX}	No	Yes	-2	7
106	Rated motor speed	Depends on the unit	100-60000 rpm	No	Yes	0	6
107	Automatic motor adaptation, AMA	Adaptation off		No	No	0	5
108	Stator resistor	Depends on the unit		No	Yes	-4	7
109	Stator reactance	Depends on the unit		No	Yes	-2	7
110	Motor magnetizing, 0 rpm	100 %	0 - 300 %	Yes	Yes	0	6
111	Min. frequency normal	1.0 Hz	0.1 - 10.0 Hz	Yes	Yes	-1	6
	magnetizing						
112							
113	Load compensation at low speed	100 %	0 - 300 %	Yes	Yes	0	6
114	Load compensation at high speed	100 %	0 - 300 %	Yes	Yes	0	6
115	Slip compensation	100 %	-500 - 500 %	Yes	Yes	0	3
116	Slip compensation time constant	0.50 s	0.05 - 1.00 s	Yes	Yes	-2	6
117	Resonance dampening	100 %	0 - 500 %	Yes	Yes	0	6
118	Resonance dampening time	5 ms	5 - 50 ms	Yes	Yes	-3	6
	constant						
119	High starting torque	0.0 sec.	0.0 - 0.5 s	Yes	Yes	-1	5
120	Start delay	0.0 sec.	0.0 - 10.0 s	Yes	Yes	-1	5
121	Start function	Coasting in start delay time		Yes	Yes	0	5
122	Function at stop	Coasting		Yes	Yes	0	5
123	Min. frequency for activating	0.0 Hz	0.0 - 10.0 Hz	Yes	Yes	-1	5
	function at stop						
124	DC holding current	50 %	0 - 100 %	Yes	Yes	0	6
125	DC braking current	50 %	0 - 100 %	Yes	Yes	0	6
126	DC braking time	10.0 sec.	0.0 - 60.0 sec.	Yes	Yes	-1	6
127	DC brake cut-in frequency	Off	0.0-par. 202	Yes	Yes	-1	6
128	Motor thermal protection	No protection		Yes	Yes	0	5
129	External motor fan	No		Yes	Yes	0	5
130	Start frequency	0.0 Hz	0.0-10.0 Hz	Yes	Yes	-1	5
131	Initial voltage	0.0 V	0.0-par. 103	Yes	Yes	-1	6
145	Minimum DC brake time	0 sec.	0 - 10 sec.	Yes	Yes	-1	6



PNU	Devenden	Footon, colling	Dance	Change	4 Catura	Camuanian	Dete
	Parameter	Factory setting	Range	Changes	4-Setup	Conversion	Data
200	Output frequency	Only clockwise, 0-132 Hz		during operat	Yes	index	type 5
200	range/direction	Offig Clockwise, 0-102 112		NO	163	O	J
201	Output frequency low limit	0.0 Hz	0.0 - f _{MAX}	Yes	Yes	-1	6
202	Output frequency high limit	66 / 132 Hz	f _{MIN} - par. 200	Yes	Yes	-1	6
203	Reference/feedback area	Min - max	IVIIIV Pail 200	Yes	Yes	0	5
204	Minimum reference	0.000	-100,000.000-Ref _{MAX}	Yes	Yes	-3	4
205	Maximum reference	50.000	Ref _{MIN} -100,000.000	Yes	Yes	-3	4
206	Ramp type	Linear		Yes	Yes	0	5
207	Ramp-up time 1	Depends on unit	0.05 - 3600	Yes	Yes	-2	7
208	Ramp-down time 1	Depends on unit	0.05 - 3600	Yes	Yes	-2	7
209	Ramp-up time 2	Depends on unit	0.05 - 3600	Yes	Yes	-2	7
210	Ramp-down time 2	Depends on unit	0.05 - 3600	Yes	Yes	-2	7
211	Jog ramp time	Depends on unit	0.05 - 3600	Yes	Yes	-2	7
212	Quick stop ramp-down time	Depends on unit	0.05 - 3600	Yes	Yes	-2	7
213	Jog frequency	10.0 Hz	0.0 - par. 202	Yes	Yes	-1	6
214	Reference function	Sum		Yes	Yes	0	5
215	Preset reference 1	0.00 %	- 100.00 - 100.00 %	Yes	Yes	-2	3
216	Preset reference 2	0.00 %	- 100.00 - 100.00 %	Yes	Yes	-2	3
217	Preset reference 3	0.00 %	- 100.00 - 100.00 %	Yes	Yes	-2	3
218	Preset reference 4	0.00 %	- 100.00 - 100.00 %	Yes	Yes	-2	3
219	Catch up/slow down value	0.00 %	0.00 - 100 %	Yes	Yes	-2	6
220							
221	Torque limit for motor mode	160 %	0.0 % - xxx %	Yes	Yes	-1	6
222	Torque limit for regenerative	160 %	0.0 % - xxx %	Yes	Yes	-1	6
	operation						
223	Warning: Low current	0.0 A	0.0 - par. 224	Yes	Yes	-1	6
224	Warning: High current	I _{VLT,MAX}	Par. 223 - I _{VLT,MAX}	Yes	Yes	-1	6
225	Warning: Low frequency	0.0 Hz	0.0 - par. 226	Yes	Yes	-1	6
226	Warning: High frequency	132.0 Hz	Par. 225 - par. 202	Yes	Yes	-1	6
227	Warning: Low feedback	-4000.000	-100,000.000 - par. 228	Yes		-3	4
228	Warning: High feedback	4000.000	Par. 227 - 100,000.000	Yes		-3	4
229	Frequency bypass, bandwidth	OFF	0 - 100 %	Yes	Yes	0	6
230	Frequency bypass 1	0.0 Hz	0.0 - par. 200	Yes	Yes	-1	6
231	Frequency bypass 2	0.0 Hz	0.0 - par. 200	Yes	Yes	-1	6
232	Frequency bypass 3	0.0 Hz	0.0 - par. 200	Yes	Yes	-1	6
233	Frequency bypass 4	0.0 Hz	0.0 - par. 200	Yes	Yes	-1	6
234	Motor phase monitor	Enable		Yes	Yes	0	5



PNU Parameter	Factory setting	Range	Changes	4-Setup	Conversion	Data
# description	, ,	ŭ	during op		index	type
300 Terminal 16, input	Reset		Yes	Yes	0	5
301 Terminal 17, input	Freeze reference		Yes	Yes	0	5
302 Terminal 18 Start, input	Start		Yes	Yes	0	5
303 Terminal 19, input	Reversing		Yes	Yes	0	5
304 Terminal 27, input	Coasting stop, inverse		Yes	Yes	0	5
305 Terminal 29, input	Jog		Yes	Yes	0	5
306 Terminal 32, input	Choice of setup, msb/speed up		Yes	Yes	0	5
307 Terminal 33, input	Choice of setup, lsb/speed down	1	Yes	Yes	0	5
308 Terminal 53, analogue input voltage	Reference		Yes	Yes	0	5
309 Terminal 53, min. scaling	0.0 V	0.0 - 10.0 V	Yes	Yes	-1	5
310 Terminal 53, max. scaling	10.0 V	0.0 - 10.0 V	Yes	Yes	-1	5
311 Terminal 54, analogue input voltage	No operation		Yes	Yes	0	5
312 Terminal 54, min. scaling	0.0 V	0.0 - 10.0 V	Yes	Yes	-1	5
313 Terminal 54, max. scaling	10.0 V	0.0 - 10.0 V	Yes	Yes	-1	5
314 Terminal 60, analogue input current	Reference		Yes	Yes	0	5
315 Terminal 60, min. scaling	0.0 mA	0.0 - 20.0 mA	Yes	Yes	-4	5
316 Terminal 60, max. scaling	20.0 mA	0.0 - 20.0 mA	Yes	Yes	-4	5
317 Time out	10 sec.	1 - 99 sec.	Yes	Yes	0	5
318 Function after time out	Off		Yes	Yes	0	5
319 Terminal 42, output	0 - I _{MAX} 0-20 mA		Yes	Yes	0	5
320 Terminal 42, output, pulse scaling	5000 Hz	1 - 32000 Hz	Yes	Yes	0	6
321 Terminal 45, output	0 - f _{MAX} 0-20 mA		Yes	Yes	0	5
322 Terminal 45, output, pulse scaling	5000 Hz	1 - 32000 Hz	Yes	Yes	0	6
323 Relay 01, output	Ready - no thermal warning		Yes	Yes	0	5
324 Relay 01, ON delay	0.00 sec.	0.00 - 600 sec.	Yes	Yes	-2	6
325 Relay 01, OFF delay	0.00 sec.	0.00 - 600 sec.	Yes	Yes	-2	6
326 Relay 04, output	Ready - remote control		Yes	Yes	0	5
327 Pulse reference, max. frequency	5000 Hz		Yes	Yes	0	6
328 Pulse feedback, max. frequency	25000 Hz		Yes	Yes	0	6
329 Encoder feedback pulse/rev.	1024 pulses/rev.	1 - 4096	Yes	Yes	0	6
		pulses/rev.				
330 Freeze reference/output function	No operation		Yes	No	0	5
345 Encoder loss timeout	1 sec.	0 - 60 sec	Yes	Yes	-1	6
346 Encoder loss function	OFF		Yes	Yes	0	5
357 Terminal 42, Output minimum	0 %	000 - 100%	Yes	Yes	0	6
scaling						
358 Terminal 42, Output maximum	100%	000 - 500%	Yes	Yes	0	6
scaling						
359 Terminal 45, Output minimum	0 %	000 - 100%	Yes	Yes	0	6
scaling						
360 Terminal 45, Output maximum	100%	000 - 500%	Yes	Yes	0	6
scaling						
361 Encoder loss threshold	300%	000 - 600 %	Yes	Yes	0	6



PNU Parameter		Factory setting	Range	Changes	4-Setup	Conversion	Data
# description				during oper	ation	index	type
400 Brake function	n/overvoltage control	Off		Yes	No	0	5
401 Brake resisto	r, ohm	Depends on the unit		Yes	No	-1	6
402 Brake power	limit, kW	Depends on the unit		Yes	No	2	6
403 Power monito	oring	On		Yes	No	0	5
404 Brake check		Off		Yes	No	0	5
405 Reset function	n	Manual reset		Yes	Yes	0	5
406 Automatic res	start time	5 sec.	0 - 10 sec.	Yes	Yes	0	5
407 Mains Failure	1	No function		Yes	Yes	0	5
408 Quick discha	rge	Not possible		Yes	Yes	0	5
409 Trip delay tor	que	Off	0 - 60 sec.	Yes	Yes	0	5
410 Trip delay-inv	rerter	Depends on type of unit	0 - 35 sec.	Yes	Yes	0	5
411 Switching fre	quency	Depends on type of unit	3 - 14 kHz	Yes	Yes	2	6
412 Output freque	ency dependent switching	Not possible		Yes	Yes	0	5
frequency							
413 Overmodulati	ion function	On		Yes	Yes	-1	5
414 Minimum fee	dback	0.000	-100,000.000	Yes	Yes	-3	4
			- FB _{HIGH}				
415 Maximum fee	edback	1500.000	FB _{LOW} -	Yes	Yes	-3	4
			100,000.000				
416 Process unit		%		Yes	Yes	0	5
417 Speed PID pi	roportional gain	0.015	0.000 - 0.150	Yes	Yes	-3	6
418 Speed PID in	tegration time	8 ms	2.00 - 999.99	Yes	Yes	-4	7
			ms				
419 Speed PID di	fferentiation time	30 ms	0.00 - 200.00	Yes	Yes	-4	6
			ms				
420 Speed PID di	ff. gain ratio	5.0	5.0 - 50.0	Yes	Yes	-1	6
421 Speed PID lo	w-pass filter	10 ms	5 - 200 ms	Yes	Yes	-4	6
422 U 0 voltage a	at 0 Hz	20.0 V	0.0 -	Yes	Yes	-1	6
			parameter				
			103				
423 U 1 voltage		parameter 103	0.0 - Uvlt, max	Yes	Yes	-1	6
424 F 1 frequency	y	parameter 104	0.0 -	Yes	Yes	-1	6
			parameter				
			426				
425 U 2 voltage		parameter 103	0.0 - U _{VLT, MAX}	Yes	Yes	-1	6
426 F 2 frequency	y	parameter 104	par.424-	Yes	Yes	-1	6
			par.428				
427 U 3 voltage		parameter 103	0.0 - U _{VLT, MAX}	Yes	Yes	-1	6
428 F 3 frequency	y	parameter 104	par.426	Yes	Yes	-1	6
			-par.430				
429 U 4 voltage		parameter 103	0.0 - U _{VLT, MAX}	Yes	Yes	-1	6



		_				
PNU Parameter	Factory setting	Range	Changes	4-Setup	Conversion	Data
# description				during operation		type
430 F 4 frequency	parameter 104	par.426-par.432	Yes	Yes	-1	6
431 U 5 voltage	parameter 103	.0 - U _{VLT, MAX}	Yes	Yes	-1	6
432 F 5 frequency	parameter 104	par.426 - 1000 Hz	Yes	Yes	-1	6
433 Torque proportional gain	100%	0 (Off) - 500%	Yes	Yes	0	6
434 Torque integral time	0.02 sec.	0.002 - 2.000 sec.	Yes	Yes	-3	7
437 Process PID Normal/inverse control	Normal		Yes	Yes	0	5
438 Process PID anti windup	On		Yes	Yes	0	5
439 Process PID start frequency	parameter 201	f _{min - fmax}	Yes	Yes	-1	6
440 Process PID proportional gain	0.01	0.00 - 10.00	Yes	Yes	-2	6
441 Process PID integral time	9999.99 sec. (OFF)	0.01 - 9999.99 sec.	Yes	Yes	-2	7
442 Process PID differentiation time	0.00 sec. (OFF)	0.00 - 10.00 sec.	Yes	Yes	-2	6
443 Process PID diff. gain limit	5.0	5.0 - 50.0	Yes	Yes	-1	6
444 Process PID lowpass filter time	0.01	0.01 - 10.00	Yes	Yes	-2	6
445 Flying start	Disable		Yes	Yes	0	5
446 Switching pattern	SFAVM		Yes	Yes	0	5
447 Torque compensation	100%	-100 - +100%	Yes	Yes	0	3
448 Gear ratio	1	0.001 - 100.000	No	Yes	-2	4
449 Friction loss	0%	0 - 50%	No	Yes	-2	6
450 Mains voltage at mains fault	Depends on unit	Depends on unit	Yes	Yes	0	6
453 Speed closed loop gear ratio	1	0.01-100	No	Yes	0	4
454 Dead time compensation	On		No	No	0	5
455 Frequency range monitor	Enable				0	5
457 Phase loss function	Trip		Yes	Yes	0	5
483 Dynamic DC Link compensation	On		No	No	0	5



PNU	Parameter	Factory setting	Range	Changes	4-Setup	Conversion	Data
#	description			during opera		index	type
500	Address	1	0 - 126	Yes	No	0	6
501	Baudrate	9600 Baud		Yes	No	0	5
502	Coasting	Logic or		Yes	Yes	0	5
503	Quick-stop	Logic or		Yes	Yes	0	5
504	DC-brake	Logic or		Yes	Yes	0	5
505	Start	Logic or		Yes	Yes	0	5
506	Reversing	Logic or		Yes	Yes	0	5
507	Selection of setup	Logic or		Yes	Yes	0	5
508	Selection of speed	Logic or		Yes	Yes	0	5
509	Bus jog 1	10.0 Hz	0.0 - parameter 202	Yes	Yes	-1	6
510	Bus jog 2	10.0 Hz	0.0 - parameter 202	Yes	Yes	-1	6
511							
512	Telegram profile	FC Drive		No	Yes	0	5
513	Bus time interval	1 sec.	1 - 99 s	Yes	Yes	0	5
514	Bus time interval function	Off		Yes	Yes	0	5
515	Data read-out: Reference %			No	No	-1	3
516	Data read-out: Reference unit			No	No	-3	4
517	Data read-out: Feedback			No	No	-3	4
518	Data read-out: Frequency			No	No	-1	6
519	Data read-out: Frequency x Scaling			No	No	-2	7
520	Data read-out: Current			No	No	-2	7
521	Data read-out: Torque			No	No	-1	3
522	Data read-out: Power, kW			No	No	1	7
523	Data read-out: Power, HP			No	No	-2	7
524	Data read-out: Motor voltage			No	No	-1	6
525	Data read-out: DC link voltage			No	No	0	6
526	Data read-out: Motor temp.			No	No	0	5
527	Data read-out: VLT temp.			No	No	0	5
528	Data read-out: Digital input			No	No	0	5
529	Data read-out: Terminal 53,			No	No	-2	3
	analogue input						
530	Data read-out: Terminal 54,			No	No	-2	3
	analogue input						
531	Data read-out: Terminal 60,			No	No	-5	3
	analogue input						
532	Data read-out: Pulse reference			No	No	-1	7
533	Data read-out: External reference %			No	No	-1	3
534	Data read-out: Status word, binary			No	No	0	6
535	Data read-out: Brake power/2 min.			No	No	2	6
536	Data read-out: Brake power/sec.			No	No	2	6
537	Data read-out: Heat sink temperature			No	No	0	5
538	Data read-out: Alarm word, binary			No	No	0	7
539	Data read-out: VLT Control word, binary			No	No	0	6
540	Data read-out: Warning word, 1			No	No	0	7
541	Data read-out: Extended Status word			No	No	0	7
553	Display text 1			No	No	0	9
554	Display text 2			No	No	0	9
557	Data read-out: Motor RPM			No	No	0	4
558	Data read-out: Motor RPM x scaling			No	No	-2	4
580	Defined parameter			No	No	0	6
581	Defined parameter			No	No	0	6
582	Defined parameter			No	No	0	6



PNU	Parameter	Footon, cotting	Danas	Changes	4 Catura	Communica	Doto
		Factory setting	Range	Changes	4-Setup	Conversion	Data
600	Operating data: Operating hours			during ope	No.	index 74	ype 7
601	Operating data: Operating nours Operating data: Hours run			No	No	74	7
602	Operating data: Hours run Operating data: kWh counter			No	No	1	7
603	Operating data: Number of power-up's			No	No	0	6
604	Operating data: Number of power-up's Operating data: Number of overtemperatures			No	No	0	6
605	Operating data: Number of overtemperatures Operating data: Number of overvoltages			No	No	0	6
606	Data log: Digital input			No	No	0	5
607				No	No	0	6
608	Data log: Bus commands Data log: Bus Status word			No	No	0	6
609	Data log: Reference			No	No	-1	3
610	Data log: Feedback			No	No	-3	4
611	Data log: Motor frequency			No	No	-3 -1	3
612	Data log: Motor voltage			No	No	<u>-1</u> -1	6
613	Data log: Motor current			No	No	-2	3
614	Data log: DC link voltage			No	No	0	6
615	Fault log: Error code			No	No	0	5
616	Fault log: Time			No	No	<u>-1</u>	7
617	Fault log: Value			No	No	0	3
618	Reset of kWh counter	No reset		Yes	No	0	5
619	Reset of hours-run counter	No reset		Yes	No	0	5
620	Operating mode Normal function	Normal function		No	No	0	5
621	Nameplate: VLT type	TVOITIGI TUTIONOTI		No	No	0	9
622	Nameplate: Power section			No	No	0	9
623	Nameplate: VLT ordering number			No	No	0	9
624	Nameplate: Software version no.			No	No	0	9
625	Nameplate: LCP identification no.			No	No	0	9
626	Nameplate: Database identification no.			No	No	-2	9
627	Nameplate: Power section identification no.			No	No	0	9
628	Nameplate: Application option type			No	No	0	9
629	Nameplate: Application option ordering no.			No	No	0	9
630	Nameplate: Communication option type			No	No	0	9
631	Nameplate: Communication option ordering no.			No	No	0	9



PNU	Parameter	Factory setting	Range	Changes	4-Setup	Conversion	Data type
#	description			during ope	eration	index	
700	Relay 6, function	Ready signal		Yes	Yes	0	5
701	Relay 6, ON delay	0 sec.	0.00-600 sec.	Yes	Yes	-2	6
702	Relay 6, OFF delay	0 sec.	0.00-600 sec.	Yes	Yes	-2	6
703	Relay 7, function	Motor running		Yes	Yes	0	5
704	Relay 7, ON delay	0 sec.	0.00-600 sec.	Yes	Yes	-2	6
705	Relay 7, OFF delay	0 sec.	0.00-600 sec.	Yes	Yes	-2	6
706	Relay 8, function	Mains ON		Yes	Yes	0	5
707	Relay 8, ON delay	0 sec.	0.00-600 sec.	Yes	Yes	-2	6
708	Relay 8, OFF delay	0 sec.	0.00-600 sec.	Yes	Yes	-2	6
709	Relay 9, function	Fault		Yes	Yes	0	5
710	Relay 9, ON delay	0 sec.	0.00-600 sec.	Yes	Yes	-2	6
711	Relay 9, OFF delay	0 sec.	0.00-600 sec.	Yes	Yes	-2	6



ndex	Electrical installation	2, 78
	Electrical installation - 24 Volt external DC supply	66
	Electrical installation - brake cable	64
A	Electrical installation - brake resistor temperature switch	64
Accuracy of display readout (parameters 009-012)34	Electrical installation - bus connection	79
Acoustic noise	Electrical installation - control cables	76
Additional characteristics	Electrical installation - earthing of control cables	83
Additional Text104	Electrical installation - EMC precautions	80
Aggressive environments	Electrical installation - external fan supply	66
Air Humidity121		
Application option		
	Electrical installation - relay outputs	66
	Electrical installation, power cables	
В	Electrical installation, power cables	
Basic characteristics		
Brake resistor		
Brake resistors		
	Externals	
_		0
С		
cable clamps	F	
control cables	Factory settings	135
Cable clamp83		
Cable lengths	FC protocol	92
CE labelling125		
Connection of motor		
Control card, 24 V DC supply		
Control card, analogue inputs	!	
Control card, digital inputs:	G	
Control card, digital/pulse and analogue outputs	Galvanic Isolation (PELV)	114
Control card, pulse/encoder input		
Control card, RS 485 serial communication		
Control characteristics		
Control Word	<u> </u>	
Conversion and unit of measurement100		
Cooling	Н	
	Harmonic filter	18
	Harmonic filters	29
D	high torque characteristic	13
direction of motor rotation		
Data Character (byte)89	<u> </u>	
Default value102		
Definitions	· I	
Derating for Air Pressure118	IT mains	84
Derating for ambient temperature118	Interbus	23
Derating for high switching frequency119	Introduction	6
Derating for Running at Low Speed119		
DeviceNet		
DIP Switches 1-4	V	
Direction of motor rotation	K. Branco	1, 12
F	•	
E	L. Park	
earthing83	1.0 (1)	
Earth leakage current114	LC filter1	0, 24



Line reactors
Literature7
Loadsharing64
LonWorks
M
Mains supply
Mains supply (L1, L2, L3):
Mains Supply Interference/Harmonics124
MCT 10
Mechanical dimensions
Mechanical installation
Modbus
Motor cables
Motor protection
·
Motor thermal protection
N
Name
normal torque characteristic
Number of elements
Number of cicinents
0
Output data31
P
F
P Profibus DP-V1
•
Profibus DP-V1
Profibus DP-V1
Profibus DP-V1
Profibus DP-V1 19 Parallel coupling of motors 63 PC Software tools 18 Peak voltage 116 PLC 83
Profibus DP-V1 19 Parallel coupling of motors 63 PC Software tools 18 Peak voltage 116 PLC 83 Power Factor 124
Profibus DP-V1 19 Parallel coupling of motors. 63 PC Software tools. 18 Peak voltage. 116 PLC. 83 Power Factor 124 Profibus. 23
Profibus DP-V1 19 Parallel coupling of motors 63 PC Software tools 18 Peak voltage 116 PLC 83 Power Factor 124
Profibus DP-V1 19 Parallel coupling of motors. 63 PC Software tools. 18 Peak voltage. 116 PLC. 83 Power Factor 124 Profibus. 23
Profibus DP-V1 19 Parallel coupling of motors. 63 PC Software tools. 18 Peak voltage. 116 PLC. 83 Power Factor 124 Profibus. 23
Profibus DP-V1 19 Parallel coupling of motors. 63 PC Software tools. 18 Peak voltage. 116 PLC. 83 Power Factor 124 Profibus. 23 Protocols. 87
Profibus DP-V1 19 Parallel coupling of motors 63 PC Software tools 18 Peak voltage 116 PLC 83 Power Factor 124 Profibus 23 Protocols 87 R Read parameter description elements 99
Profibus DP-V1 19 Parallel coupling of motors 63 PC Software tools 18 Peak voltage 116 PLC 83 Power Factor 124 Profibus 23 Protocols 87 R Read parameter description elements 99 Relay outputs: 33, 33
Profibus DP-V1 19 Parallel coupling of motors 63 PC Software tools 18 Peak voltage 116 PLC 83 Power Factor 124 Profibus 23 Protocols 87 R Read parameter description elements 99 Relay outputs: 33, 33 RFI switch 84
Profibus DP-V1 19 Parallel coupling of motors 63 PC Software tools 18 Peak voltage 116 PLC 83 Power Factor 124 Profibus 23 Protocols 87 R Read parameter description elements 99 Relay outputs: 33, 33 RFI switch 84 Rise time 116
Profibus DP-V1 19 Parallel coupling of motors 63 PC Software tools 18 Peak voltage 116 PLC 83 Power Factor 124 Profibus 23 Protocols 87 R Read parameter description elements 99 Relay outputs: 33, 33 RFI switch 84
Profibus DP-V1 19 Parallel coupling of motors 63 PC Software tools 18 Peak voltage 116 PLC 83 Power Factor 124 Profibus 23 Protocols 87 R Read parameter description elements 99 Relay outputs: 33, 33 RFI switch 84 Rise time 116
Profibus DP-V1 19 Parallel coupling of motors 63 PC Software tools 18 Peak voltage 116 PLC 83 Power Factor 124 Profibus 23 Protocols 87 R Read parameter description elements 99 Relay outputs: 33, 33 RFI switch 84 Rise time 116
Profibus DP-V1 19 Parallel coupling of motors 63 PC Software tools 18 Peak voltage 116 PLC 83 Power Factor 124 Profibus 23 Protocols 87 R Read parameter description elements 99 Relay outputs: 33, 33 RFI switch 84 Rise time 116 RS 485 79
Profibus DP-V1 19 Parallel coupling of motors 63 PC Software tools 18 Peak voltage 116 PLC 83 Power Factor 124 Profibus 23 Protocols 87 R Read parameter description elements 99 Relay outputs: 33, 33 RFI switch 84 Rise time 116 RS 485 79 S Safety earthing 62
Profibus DP-V1 19 Parallel coupling of motors 63 PC Software tools 18 Peak voltage 116 PLC 83 Power Factor 124 Profibus 23 Protocols 87 R Read parameter description elements 99 Relay outputs: 33, 33 RFI switch 84 Rise time 116 RS 485 79
Profibus DP-V1 19 Parallel coupling of motors 63 PC Software tools 18 Peak voltage 116 PLC 83 Power Factor 124 Profibus 23 Protocols 87 R Read parameter description elements 99 Relay outputs: 33, 33 RFI switch 84 Rise time 116 RS 485 79 S Safety earthing 62 Safety regulations 4

I	
Telegram Structure	87
Telegram Traffic	87
Terminal cover,	18
Tightening-up torques and screw sizes	64
Torque characteristics	31
Type code ordering number string	13
Typecode	16
U	
Upper limit	102
Unintended start	
Use of emc-correct cables	82
V	
Vibration and Shock	121
VLT 5000 Series protection:	36, 36
VIt output data (u, v, w):	
W	
Warning against unintended start	4